



**EXPERIMENTAL JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOL  
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MACEDONIA**

# **GRAMMAR REQUIREMENTS FOR LEVELS B1 – C2**

This publication has made use of the [English Grammar Profile](#). This resource is based on extensive research using the Cambridge Learner Corpus and is part of the English Profile programme, which aims to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

See <http://www.englishprofile.org/> for more information.

# ADJECTIVES

## COMBINING

### FORM: BEFORE THE NOUN

[B1] Can use a comma to combine two adjectives used before the noun, following the usual order of adjective types.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was the biggest TV in the bazaar, with its huge, black screen.*

*My house was built in 1864. It's an old, Victorian-style house.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It was the biggest TV in bazaar with its huge, black screen.*

*My house has been build in 1864. It's an old, Victorian style house.*

#### Comments

L1 has a strong influence on order of adjectives. Because of this we haven't been able to capture a general view of the order in which adjectives emerge. We flag it for future study within a L1 comparative context.

### FORM: COMBINING COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES WITH 'AND'

[B1] Can use 'and' to join a limited range of comparative adjectives.► adjectives: comparatives

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*In the winter you can go to the fitness centre, there you can get stronger and fitter.*

*The cars will fly around the buildings like planes, and they will be faster and cheaper.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In the winter you can go in the fitness center, there can you get stronger and fitter.*

*The car will fly around the buildings like planes and it they will be faster and cheaper.*

### FORM: COMBINING MORE THAN TWO ADJECTIVES

[B1] Can use commas and 'and' to join more than two adjectives, after 'be'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Her name is Cassia, she is beautiful, intelligent, funny and very reliable.*

*He is tall, thin and not very handsome, but he is very nice and friendly.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Her name is Cassia, she is beautiful, inteligent, funny and very reliable.*

*He is tall, thin and not very handsome, but he is very nice and friendly.*

### FORM: COMBINING MULTIPLE ADJECTIVES

[C2] Can combine more complex, lengthy strings of adjectives, joining the last two adjectives with 'and'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*A timid, shy, self-conscious, over-sensitive and vulnerable person can yearn to make friends with someone who is very self-assured, confident, decisive, even bossy.*

*In the increasingly materialistic, greedy and shallow society we live in today, it would almost seem that there are no disadvantages to being rich.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*A timid, shy, self-conscious, oversensitive and vulnerable person can crave to make friends with someone who is very much self-assured, confident, decisive, even bossy.*

*In the increasingly materialistic, greedy and depthless society we live in today, it would almost seem that there are no disadvantages to being rich, save for a few minor worries.*

## **FORM: COMBINING THE SAME COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE WITH 'AND'**

[B1] Can use 'and' to repeat a comparative adjective to indicate change over time, usually after 'become' or get. ► adjectives: comparatives

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I could see how the fire was burning the door, and the room became hotter and hotter.*

*I think that's a good question, because nowadays television is getting worse and worse, but there are still some good programmes.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I could see how the fire was burning the door and the room became hotter and hotter.*

*Dear Paul, I think that's a good question because nowadays television is getting worse and worse, but there are still some good programmes: for example I like the quiz show called "Who wants to be a millanaire".*

## **FORM: COMPOUND ADJECTIVES**

[B1] Can use a limited range of compound adjectives ('good-looking', 'well-known')

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*He was tall and good-looking.*

*This programme is presented by "Gato Feobranto," a well-known comedy group.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*He was tall and good-looking.*

*This programme is presented by "Gato Feobranto," a well-known comedy group.*

[B2] Can use an increasing range of compound adjectives ('up-to-date', 'state-of-the-art')

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The selling point is that it contains the most up-to-date and state-of-the-art know-how, for instance a water-proof keyboard, information security system, etc. A survey of our customers last year indicated that over 70% of them are content with the user-friendly designs.*

*...getting to work (in big cities) by car is more healthy for drivers but has a long-term effect on the environment and on us, in the end, as well.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The selling point is that it contains the most up-to-date and state-of-the-art know-how, for instance water-proof keyboard, information security system etc. A survey among our customers were launched last year, and the result indicated that over 70% of them are content with the user-friendly designs.*

*In my opinion, from realistic point of view, getting to work (in big cities) by car is more healthy for drivers but has long-term effect on environment and on us, at the end, as well.*

[C1] Can use a wide range of compound adjectives ('open-minded', 'above-mentioned', 'well-to-do', 'jaw-dropping')

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would describe myself as an easy-going and open-minded person.*

*...we suggest investing a certain amount of money in the above-mentioned technical devices in order to achieve the financial target.*

*But as she does not live in a well-to-do family, Ola was never able to afford additional private lessons, for example.*

*If anyone has ever seen it, they would agree with me that it was THE most jaw-dropping road in the world.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would describe myself as an easy-going and open-minded person who doesn't find it difficult to talk about everything with everybody even with strangers.*

*Considering that our business is booming we suggest to invest a certain amount of money in the above-mentioned technical devices in order to achieve the financial target which is to increase our gross profit by 10%.*

*But as she does not live in a well-to-do family – she is half an orphan – Ola was never able to afford additional private lessons for example.*

*If anyone has ever seen it, they would agree with me that it was THE most jaw-dropping road in the world.*

## FORM: PHRASES MODIFYING NOUNS

[B2] Can use adjective phrases to modify nouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Besides, we could leave one day in the morning and travel by boat to a small and exotic island full of different and exotic species of birds that we could observe and photograph.*

*Emily Brontë succeeded in writing a romantic, psychological and tragic story, beautifully set in these mysterious moors.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Besides we could leave one day in the morning and reach by boat to a small and exotic island full of different and exotic species of birds that we could observe and photograph.*

*Emily Brönte succeeded in writing a romantic, psychological and tragical story, beautifully set in these mysterious moors.*

## USE: FOCUS

[C2] Can use a list of adjectives in ellipited clauses before and after a noun, to give focus. ► focus

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Imaginative, good-humoured, friendly, he was respected and liked by his peer-students.  
The latter – fat, ugly and sick – blows his top when Ralph tells the others about the fat boy's nice name, as he wanted to keep it secret.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Imaginative, good-humoured, friendly, he was respected and liked by his peer-students.  
The latter, – fat, ugly and sick – blows his top when Ralph tells the others about the fat boy's nice name, as he craved for keeping it secret.*

## **COMPARATIVES**

### **FORM/USE: WITH '(SO) MUCH'**

[B1] Can use '(so) much' to modify and intensify comparative adjectives used predicatively after a verb, usually 'be'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I think the teacher in the new class is much better than the last one.  
The house is beautiful, and so much bigger than the previous one.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I think the teacher is the new class is much better than the last one.  
The house is beautiful and so much bigger than the previous one.*

### **FORM/USE: WITH 'A (LITTLE) BIT'**

[B1] Can use 'a (little) bit' to modify comparative adjectives used predicatively after a verb, usually 'be'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*He's 15, a bit smaller than me, dark hair, brown eyes.  
Our first lesson was a bit shorter, but very unusual.  
She's a little bit older than me.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*He's 15, a bit smaller than me, dark hair, brown eyes.  
Our first lesson was a bit shorter, but very unusual.  
She's a little bit older than me.*

### **FORM/USE: WITH 'A LOT'**

[B2] Can use 'a lot' to modify and intensify comparative adjectives used predicatively after a verb, usually 'be'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*In addition, remember that a bike, even a good one, is a lot cheaper than a car.  
Don't you think it would be a lot easier for you to finish college first?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*In addition, remember that a bike, even a good one, is a lot cheaper than a car.  
Don't you think it will be a lot easier for you to finish first collage, and it is not long left to your finall exams.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'AND'

[B1] Can use 'and' to repeat a comparative adjective to indicate change over time, usually after 'become' or 'get'. ► adjectives: comparatives

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I saw everything become smaller and smaller.*

*I think that's a good question, because nowadays television is getting worse and worse, but there are still some good programmes.*

*Summer is coming. Days become longer and longer.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I saw all the things become smaller and smaller.*

*I think that's a good question because nowadays television is getting worse and worse, but there are still some good programmes:*

*Days become longer and longer.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'EVEN'

[B1] Can use 'even' to modify and intensify comparative adjectives used predicatively after a verb, usually 'be' and 'get'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a series of films] I'm sure you've seen part one already, but part two was even better!*

*As I finished, my smile got even bigger.*

*I think that it is awful, because that means that in Spain it will be even hotter than it is now.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I'm sure you've seen part one already, but part two was even better !*

*As I finished, my smile got even bigger.*

*They said in the documentarie that in a few years the average temperature will rose some degres, I think that it is awful, because that mean that in Spain it will be even hotter than it is now.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'MUCH' + NOUN

[B2] Can use 'much' to modify and intensify comparative adjectives used attributively before countable and uncountable nouns.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Although it is a second-hand computer which one of my colleagues sold me, it is a much better investment than the bicycle, I think.*

*I think the Majestic Hotel is too expensive, so what about a much cheaper hotel like the Plaza Hotel?*

*On the other hand, our grandparents had much fresher vegetables and meat they could trust, without BSE...*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Although it is a second-hand computer, which one of my colleagues sold me, it is a much better investment than the bicycle, I think.*

*I think Majestic Hotel is too expensive so what about a much cheaper hotel like Plaza Hotel?*

*On the other hand, our grandparents had much fresher vegetables and meat they could trust, without BSE...*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'NO' OR 'NOT ANY'

[C2] Can use 'no' / 'not any' with comparative adjectives to limit the scale of comparison. ► comparative clauses

### Corrected Learner Examples

*That is why we are not any happier than you were.*

*I will probably find the water to be no higher than my thighs.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*That is why as you mentioned, we are not any happier than you were.*

*I will probably find the water to be no higher than my thies.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'NOT THAT MUCH'

[C2] Can use 'not that much' to modify comparative adjectives to a small degree. ► comparative clauses

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Although she is not that much older than I am, one could think there were quite a few years between us.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Although she is not that much older than I am, one could think we would differ quite a few years.*

### Comments

This is a very low frequency item.

### FORM/USE: WITH 'SLIGHTLY'

[B2] Can use 'slightly' to modify comparative adjectives to a small degree.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I bought a new one, since the price of a second-hand one was slightly cheaper.*

*They have their own characteristics, but the food of restaurant A is slightly better than that of B.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I bought a new one since the price of a second-hand one was slightly cheaper than the price of a new one.*

*They have their own characteristic in food but the food of A restaurant is slightly better than that of B*

## MODIFYING

### FORM: ADJECTIVE PHRASE + NOUN

[B1] Can use adjective phrases attributively, before a noun.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*... my boss told me that at 10.15 am I have a very important meeting.  
... she's also a really good friend.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We wanted to meet us next Tuesday at 10am in front of the cinema but yesterday my boss told me, that at 10.15am I have a very important meeting.  
I love being with her so much because everytime we see each other we can't stop laughing about everything we're going through; she's hilarious but she's also a really good friend.*

## FORM: COMPARISON

[C2] Can use adjectives in 'as ... as' and 'so ... that' in comparative structures. ► comparative clauses

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Because our debates do not draw as large a number of students as the guest appearances, but are still enjoyed by a relevant number of students, we propose a change of focus for the events.  
It was such a riddle that I went and saw my psycho-analyst, who revealed to me that I once had so strong a shock that I was now walking and hiding my money in my sleep.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Because our debates do not draw as large a number of students as the guest appearances, but are still enjoyed by a relevant number of students, we propose a change of focus of the events.  
It was such a riddle that I went and saw my psycho-analyst who revealed to me that I once had so strong a shock that I was now walking and hiding my money in my sleep.*

## FORM: WITH 'ENOUGH'

[B1] Can use 'enough' to modify adjectives.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*My room is big enough, there is a lot of space, and for this reason I will buy a stereo.  
I thought they had the same problem as me: we don't think our English is good enough.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*My room is big enough and there is a lot of space and for this reason I will buy a stereo.  
I thought they got the same problem as me, we don't think our English is good enough.*

### Comments

There are lots of errors with word order for this feature, e.g. ... 'you are enough responsible to stay for some days without your parents' – but at B1 the structure is there.

## FORM: WITH 'ENOUGH' + 'TO'-INFINITIVE

[B2] Can use 'enough' after adjectives followed by 'to'-infinitive

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about an arts festival] I was lucky enough to take part in it last November, and I enjoyed it immensely.  
In my opinion young people at that age are not mature enough to decide by themselves what they want for their future.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I was lucky enough to take part in it last November, and I enjoyed it immensely.*

*In my opinion young people at that age are not mature enough to decide by themselves what they want for their future.*

### FORM: WITH 'QUITE A'

[B1] Can form adjective phrases with 'quite a' + adjective.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I been thinking about your last letter for quite a long time and I came to the following conclusion.*

*This is quite a difficult situation you have.*

*I personally think going to a large school is quite a good idea.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I been thinking about your last letter for quite a long time and I came to the following conclusion.*

*This is quite a difficult situation you have.*

*I personally think going to a large school is quite a good idea as it is in the centre of town, you probably could do some shopping afterward and it's more stuffs to do than the one in the countryside you know.*

### FORM: WITH 'RATHER A'

[B2] Can form adjective phrases with 'rather a' + adjective, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Films tend to be rather a simple art, while books are a thing to be enjoyed in a calmer way.*

*I must confess that I'm rather a poor player.*

*I live rather a long way from work, about 10 km.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Films tend to be rather a simple art, while books are a thing to be enjoyed in a calmer way.*

*For the last ten years however, I had practically no opportunity or time to improve my ability and I must confess that I'm rather a poor player.*

*The best means of getting to work, is by car, for me anyway I live rather a long way from work, about 10 km.*

### FORM: WITH 'TOO' + 'TO'-INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use 'too' before adjectives followed by 'to'-infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He always told me that he was too busy to write a letter to me, his wife.*

*We took two days to mend it, but the machine is too old to work well.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*He always told me that he was too busy to write a letter to me, his wife.*

*We took two days to mend it, but the machine is too old to work well.*

### FORM: WITH EXTREME ADVERBS

[C1] Can modify gradable adjectives with extreme adverbs of degree ('absolutely', 'extremely', 'incredibly', 'totally') to intensify their meaning.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am absolutely sure that it will attract even more attention.*

*Nowadays, it is extremely difficult to imagine how workers lived ten years ago, especially because of the incredibly fast evolution in technology.*

*I would make a totally new programme, in which the following points must be improved: ...*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I am absolutely sure that it will attract even more attention.*

*Nowadays, it is extremely difficult to imagine how lived workers ten years ago, especially because of the incredibly fast evolution in technology.*

*In my opinion, I would make a totally new programme, in which the next points must be improved: make sure the hotel is really a luxurious one and with a good service; include real English food restaurants; get the best places for theatre or opera; don't program so much free time; prepare extra events in case of emergency.*

## POSITION

### FORM/USE: DEGREE ADJECTIVES BEFORE NOUNS

[B2] Can use a limited range of degree adjectives ('real', 'absolute', 'complete') before a noun to express intensity.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*When tourists arrive, there is no area to park. This is a real problem and our town is becoming very dangerous for children; every week there is an accident.*

*Making friends is easy but to get a real, true friend is hard.*

*Suddenly the lights went out and I found myself standing in complete darkness.*

*After the teacher had told us to start, there was absolute silence.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*First of all, during the Summer, when tourists arrive, there is no area to park; this is a real problem and our town is becoming very dangerous for the children; every week there is an accident.*

*Making friends is easy but to get a real, true friend, is hard.*

*Suddenly the lights went out and I found myself standing in complete darkness.*

*After the teacher had told us to start, there was absolute silence.*

#### Comments

This form/use is restricted to the attributive, ie before nouns – not verbs

[C2] Can use an increasing range of adjectives before a noun to express intensity.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*As a conclusion, I shall say that the major problem concerns the exam.*

*It is located in the very centre of Pisa, in a magnificent ancient building.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As a conclusion, I shall say that the major problem concerns the exam.*

*It is located in the very centre of Pisa, in a magnificent ancient building.*

#### Comments

This form/use is restricted to the attributive, ie before nouns – not verbs

**FORM: ADJECTIVES WITH PREFIX 'A-'**

[B1] Can use adjectives with the prefix a- ('asleep', 'awake', 'alive', 'alone') predicatively only, after linking verbs.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I was very nervous because I was alone at the bus station ...*

*On that night while I was watching TV, I was almost asleep, the door bell rang.*

*We went in the room and I was very happy that my father was still alive.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I was very nervous because I was alone at the bus station, I didn't know anybody, and the worst!*

*On that night while I was watching TV, I was almost asleep, the door bell rang, I became wondered.*

*We went in the room and I was very happy that my father was still alive.*

**FORM: ATTRIBUTIVE (WITH NOUNS)**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adjectives attributively, before a noun. ► noun phrases

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The main character in the programme is a journalist who is visiting the town.*

*Dear Fiona, I see you are in a complicated situation, aren't you?*

*The first of them had long dark hair and the second one had short fair curly hair.*

*In the evening, we used to go to a famous restaurant where you can eat delicious local food.*

*I decided to see the "Zorro's Mask" because it's an amusing and entertaining action film and love-story.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*The main character in the programme is a journalist who is visiting the town.*

*Dear Fiona, I see you are in a complicated situation, aren't you?*

*First of them had long dark hair and the second one had short fair curly hair.*

*In the evening, we used to go to a famous restaurant where you can eat delicious local food.*

*I decided to see the "Zorro's mask" because it's an amusing and entertaining action film and love-story.*

**FORM: ATTRIBUTIVE ONLY, TIME ADJECTIVES**

[B2] Can use the adjectives 'present', 'future', 'former' before a noun.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I think we all are very concerned about the present situation.*

*We would like to hear you talk about your novels, your work in general and about your future plans.*

*In the big hall, in former times, lots of parties took place.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I think we all are very concerned about the present situation.*

*Since we have the great honor to have you here today, we would like to hear you talking about your novels, your work in general and about your future plans.*

*In the big hall, in former times, lots of parties, which were very popular, took place.*

## Comments

This form is restricted to the attributive, ie before nouns – not verbs

### FORM: PAST PARTICIPLE AS ADJECTIVE

[C1] Can use the '-ed' form of a verb as an adjective, after a noun.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*First of all, I would recommend providing a wider range of films and introducing discussions after each film shown.*

*It is believed that if some improvements are made, the club will live up to the high standards required.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*First of all, I would recommend providing wider ranpe of the films and introducing discussions after each film shown.*

*It is believed that if some improvements apply, the club will live up to the high standards required.*

### FORM: WITH 'MAKE' AS OBJECT COMPLEMENT

[B1] Can use adjectives as object complement after 'make'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*That's something that makes me angry!*

*... you should tell them that you don't want to make them sad but you really want to go on holiday with your friends.*

*Maria realised that being kind and trying to make other people happy is always the best way!*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*That's something that makes me angry!*

*Furthermore, you should tell them that you don't want to make them sad but you really want to go on holiday with your friends and that you have arranged it a long time ago, and that you don't want to miss this holiday.*

*The man thanks her and Maria also realised that being kind and trying to make other people happy is always the best way!*

### FORM: WITH PRONOUN

[B1] Can use an adjective or adjective phrase after pronouns like 'something', 'nothing', 'somewhere', 'nowhere'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I like cooking and I want to cook something special.*

*But something terrible happened next; I was so nervous that I stopped breathing!*

*There is nothing interesting on TV, nothing for teenagers.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I like cooking and I want to cook something special.*

*But something terrible happened next, I was so nervous that I stop breathing!*

*There is nothing interesting on TV, nothing for teenagers.*

## SUPERLATIVES

### FORM/USE: 'SLIGHTEST', 'FAINTEST'

[C2] Can use 'the slightest', 'the faintest' with a specific range of nouns to express the least amount possible, most frequently following a negative verb form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I should not end my relationship with Alex by phone, without giving him the slightest explanation.*

*They act as consumers, nothing more, and never show the slightest interest in learning and sharing opinions with the locals.*

*I haven't the faintest idea.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I should not end my relationship with Alex by phone, without giving him the slightest explanation.*

*They act as consumers, nothing more, and never show the slightest interest in learning and sharing opinions with the locals.*

*I haven't the faintest idea.*

### FORM/USE: 'THE BEST' WITH NOUN AND PRESENT PERFECT

[B1] Can use 'the best' before a noun + present perfect to talk about a unique experience.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was the best birthday present I have ever had.*

*That is the best game I've ever played.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I can't describe the emotions and the feeling I had during the flight but I very well just like you know it was the best birthday present I have ever had.*

*That is the best game I've ever played.*

### FORM/USE: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES

[B1] Can form an increasing range of complex noun phrases with a superlative adjective + prepositional phrase, to talk about something unique. ► noun phrases

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Yesterday was the most exciting day of my life!*

*Well, exercise is undoubtedly the most important thing in our lives for our health.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Yesterday was the most exciting day of my life!*

*Well, excercise is undoubtelly the most important thing in our lives for our health.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'BY FAR'

[B2] Can use the premodifier 'by far' to make a superlative adjective stronger.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*As you know, I've already visited almost fifty forests all over the world but I think this one is by far the most beautiful of all.*

*When I was a child, Christmas morning was by far the most exciting and happiest moment.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As you know I've already visited almost fifty forests all over the world but I think this one is by far the most beautiful of all.*

*When I was a child, Christmas morning was by far the most exciting and happiest moment.*

### FORM/USE: WITH NOUN AND POSTMODIFIER

[C1] Can use a postmodifier to make the superlative stronger in the structure superlative + postmodifier + noun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What is more, in order to increase sales of the new model to the highest possible level, the possibility of entering the Asian markets should be considered.*

*I am fond of the idea of working in Central London. It absolutely is the best possible location, I cannot deny that.*

*It is not the shortest possible route, but the easiest for people with luggage.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*What is more, in order to increase sales of the new model to the highest possible level, the possibility of entering the Asian markets should be considered.*

*It absolutely is the best possible location, I cannot deny that.*

*It is not the shortest possible route, but the easiest for people with luggage.*

### Comments

Useful teaching point: There are no examples of ever + noun in the CLC. e.g. 'The highest ever result' even at C2. In the CIC native speakers use noun + ever four times more than 'ever' + noun.

### FORM/USE: WITH POSTMODIFIER AND NOUN

[C1] Can use a postmodifier to make the superlative stronger, in the structure superlative + noun + postmodifier ('possible', 'ever', 'by far').

### Corrected Learner Examples

*... we want to present ourselves in the best way possible.*

*...this cleansing gel will definitely produce good results in the shortest time possible.*

*Achieving health by using her common sense and having fun while doing it is probably her greatest performance ever and, if elected, she could share that with the world.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Another main reason for us being such generous givers is that we want to present ourselves in the best way possible.*

*...this cleansing gel that will definitely produce good results in the shortest time possible.*

*Achieving health by using her common sense and having fun while doing it, is probably her greatest performance ever and if elected she could share that with the world.*

### FORM: 'ONE OF THE'

[B1] Can use 'one of the' before a superlative adjective, followed by a plural noun. ► noun phrases

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was one of the best days of my life.*

*I recommend that you should go to Akihabara, which is one of the most famous places in Tokyo.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It was one of the best days of my life.*

*I recommend you should go to Akihabara, which is one of the most famous places in Tokyo.*

## FORM: 'THE BEST' WITH NOUN AND 'TO-' INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use 'the best' before a noun + 'to'-infinitive. ► clauses: comparative

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Summer is the best time to visit Poland.*

*I'm sorry but I'm afraid that I'm not the best person to ask about TV, because I'm up to my eyes at work and I don't have any time to spend watching TV.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Summer is the best time to visit Poland.*

*I'm sorry but I'm afraid that I'm not the best person to ask about TV, because I'm up to my eyes at work and I don't have any time to spend watching TV.*

## FORM: ELLIPSIS, WITH 'THE'

[B2] Can use '(one of) the' with an increasing range of superlative adjectives without a following noun, when the noun is understood.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*There have been so many embarrassing moments in my life. It's very difficult to pick the most embarrassing.*

*I'm not quite sure if I agree that the car is the greatest danger to human life today, but it sure is one of the greatest.*

*That period of my life was one of the worst.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It's very difficult to pick the most embarrassing.*

*I'm not quite sure if I agree that the car is the GREATEST danger to human life today, but it sure is one of the greatest.*

*That period of my life was one of the worst.*

## FORM: WITH DETERMINERS

[B1] Can form noun phrases with a range of determiners before a superlative adjective. ► noun phrases

### Corrected Learner Examples

*There, people wear their best clothes.*

*Tomorrow I'm expecting a delivery of our latest catalogues.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*There, people wear their best clothes.*

*Tomorrow I'm expecting a delivery of our latest catalogues.*



## FORM: WITH NOUN AND 'TO-' INFINITIVE

[B2] Can use superlative adjectives before a noun + 'to'-infinitive. ► clauses: comparative

### Corrected Learner Examples

*To be honest, I think that, to be in competition with other markets, we need to be updated and the easiest way to do it is to use computers.*

*For those people who don't work and can't afford a car, a bicycle is perhaps the cheapest way to travel in the city.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*To be honest, I think that to be in competition with other markets we need to be fast and up dated and the easiest way to do it is to use Computers.*

*For those people who don't work and they can't afford a car, a bicycle is cheaper and perhaps the cheapest way to travel for the city.*

# ADVERBS

## ADVERB PHRASES – FORM

### FORM/USE: ADVERB + 'ENOUGH'

[C1] Can post-modify adverbs with 'enough to intensify'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Surprisingly enough, Meal's management was very responsive.*

*Sadly enough, I wasn't able to find any job proposals for us myself, so I'll just have to speculate on the results of your work.*

*Luckily enough, we have a garden where we can cook over an open fire, and as the temperatures in June are rather enjoyable here in Sweden, it actually works.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Surprisingly enough , Meal's management was very responsive.*

*Sadly enough, I wasn't able to find any job proposals for us myself, so, shamefully, I'll just have to speculate on the results of your work.*

*Luckily enough, we have a garden where we can cook over an open fire, and as the temperatures in June are rather enjoyable here in Sweden, it actually works.*

### Comments

Note the emergence of post-modification patterns at C1.

### FORM/USE: ADVERBS + PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES, HIGHLIGHT

[C1] Can post-modify adverbs with a complex prepositional phrase complement, to highlight information.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Luckily for you, I kept notes on everything we did, so I proudly present to you the top 4 of our course-days.*

*Unfortunately for some of them, the "holiday of their dreams" turned out to be rather nightmarish.*

*Especially in the period of 1999–2001, it shot up from 5 points to 7 points.*

*Probably in the next ten or more years, the engineering profession will be as much respected as it used to be twenty years ago.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Luckily for you, I kept notes on everything we did, so I proudly present you the top 4 of our course-days.*

*Unfortunately for some of them the "holiday of their dreams" turned out to be rather nightmarish.*

*Especially for people like me from other cities it would make it easier to find the centre if you would include a small map into the packet.*

*Especially in the period of 1999–2001, it shop up from 5 points to 7 points.*

*Probably in the next ten or more years profession of an engineer will be as much respected as it used to be twenty years ago.*

### Comments

Note the emergence of post-modification patterns at C1.

## FORM: ADVERB + ADVERB

[B1] Can modify an increasing range of adverbs with other adverbs.► adverbs and adverb phrases: types and meanings

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We get along quite well.*

*It will be really big and at first you will feel lonely, but there are so many people, you can find new friends really fast.*

*My style is almost always the same: light blue jeans, with a shirt and my old brown boots.*

*The pizza is just too good.*

*[about a film] It came out just yesterday.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We get along quite well.*

*It will be really big and at first you will feel lonely, but there are so many people, ... so you can find new friends really fast.*

*My style is almost always the same: light blue jeans, with shirt and my old brown boots.*

*The pizza is just too good.*

*[about a film] It's came out just yesterday.*

### Comments

At B2, there is little development in terms of the adverbs used to modify adverbs. Note, we predict a greater range in spoken data, particularly in intensifiers.

[C1] Can modify a wide range of adverbs with other adverbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Even the beautiful, attractive cover and the extra Audio CD aren't enough to justify the slightly higher price, especially because the value of this game will drop extremely rapidly.*

*Firstly, we should get some TV airtime, to catch the attention of a large number of people effectively and achieve a substantial market penetration relatively quickly.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Even the beautiful, attractive cover and the extra Audio CD arent enough to justify the slightly lower price (21 £ at Dixon's), especially because the value of this game will drop extremely rapidly.*

*Firstly, we should air some TV spots, catching the attention of a large number of people effectively and we achieving a substantial market penetration relatively quickly.*

### Comments

By C1, we see some development, for example, 'perfectly well', 'extremely well', 'relatively quickly', but not much (cf. C1 entry). Note, we predict a greater range in spoken data, particularly in intensifiers

## FORM: COMPARATIVE

[B2] Can modify an adverb with a comparative structure.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Obviously, you can get to work by car quicker and more comfortably than by bicycle.*

*Furthermore, you have to repair your car much more often than your bicycle – so it's quite probable that you are going to spend plenty of time in the garage.*

*The computer system is such a quick system that we can search and analyse information much more quickly than before.*

*If we could get 2 million euros to invest in the new product "Stop 'n' run", profits will rise even more sharply than they did last year.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Obviously, you can get to work by car quicker and more comfortably than by bicycle.*

*Furthermore, you have to repair your car much more often than bicycle – so it's quite probable, that you are going to spend plenty of time in garage.*

*Computers' system is such a quick system that we can search and analysis information much more quickly than before.*

*If we could get 2 million euros to invest in the new product "Stop 'n' run", profits will rise even more sharply than they already did during the last year.*

## FORM: PRE- AND POST-MODIFIED ADVERBS

[C2] Can form adverb phrases with modifiers before, and complements after, adverbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Many politicians and owners of big enterprises have been able for a long time to work almost exclusively for their own interests.*

*It was so completely in harmony with the sun, the sea, the sand, the summer, I decided instantly that was the kind of thing I would like to keep and collect.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Many politicians and owners of big enterprises, have been able for a long time to work almost exclusively for their own interests.*

*It was so completely in harmony with the sun, the sea, the sand, the summer instantly, I decided that was a kind of things I would like to keep and collect.*

## ADVERBS AND ADVERB PHRASES: TYPES AND MEANINGS

### FORM/USE: MODIFYING CLAUSES, STANCE

[B1] Can use adverbs to modify clauses and sentences to indicate stance or attitude.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*But, obviously, you prefer going with your friends because you will have a better time.*

*Luckily, I arrived in time.*

*I think you should walk with a friend, otherwise it could be boring.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*But, obviously, you prefer going with your friends because you will have a better time.*

*Luckily, I arrived in time.*

*I think you should walk with a friend, otherwise it could be boring.*

### FORM: DEGREE, MODIFYING ADVERBS

[B1] Can use a limited range of degree adverbs to modify adverbs. ► adverb phrases: form

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*We left really early on a Friday morning.*

*So I couldn't wait and I opened it very carefully.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We left really early on a Friday morning.*

*So I couldn't wait and I opened it very carefully.*

[C1] Can use an increasing range of degree adverbs to modify a range of adverb types. ► adjectives ► adverb phrases: form

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The attitude of young people today towards keeping fit and healthy has almost completely changed.*

*Moreover, making use of some techniques I practised in the How to Negotiate classes is something which happens to me quite frequently.*

*The mobile market is growing incredibly fast in Britain and your company is leading this process.*

*Recently, the charity organised a fun-raising day, which went reasonably well.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The attitude of young people today, towards keeping fit and healthy has almost completely changed.*

*Moreover, making use of some techniques I practised in the How to Negotiate classes, is something which happens to me quite frequently.*

*The mobile market is growing incredibly fast in Britain and that your company is leading this process.*

*Starting at sold units of 10M, then falling slightly down to 9M units, they finally peaked at 11 million units.*

### FORM: DEGREE, MODIFYING COMPARATIVES

[C1] Can use degree adverbs ('slightly', 'a bit', 'much') to modify comparatives.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*My Spanish is slightly more fluent than my English, because I lived in Spain longer than in England.*

*It will be a bit more expensive than the bus but it's safer and quicker.*

*Despite all the controversies between these two generations, the grandchildren shouldn't forget that their grandparents are much more experienced.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*My Spanish is slightly more fluent than my English, because I lived in Spaine longer than in England.*

*It will be a bit more expensive than the bus but it's safer and quicker.*

*Despite all the controversies between these two generations, the grandchildren shouldn't forget that their grandparents are much more experienced.*

### FORM: DEGREE, MODIFYING DETERMINERS

[B2] Can use degree adverbs ('almost', 'very') to modify determiners. ► determiners

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Today, thanks to the Internet, I can work at home almost all the time, which is far more relaxing and less boring.*

*There are probably very few of us who have never been to a zoo.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Today, thanks to the Internet I can work almost all the time at home, which is far more relaxing and less boring.*

*There are probably very few of us who have never been in a zoo.*

### FORM: DEGREE, MODIFYING NOUN PHRASES

[B2] Can use degree adverbs to modify noun phrases. ► noun phrases

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It would be quite a formal meeting.*

*I live rather a long way from work, about 10 km.*

*[talking about a dog] After all, he is almost a human.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It would be quite a formal meeting.*

*I live rather a long way from work, about 10 km.*

*[talking about a dog] After all, he is almost a human.*

### FORM: DEGREE, MODIFYING PRONOUNS

[B2] Can use degree adverbs to modify pronouns. ► pronouns

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You can eat very well and pay almost nothing.*

*This is the most crowded place in my town and you can buy absolutely anything you like.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You can eat very well and pay almost nothing.*

*This is the most crowded place in my town and you can buy absolutely anything you like.*

### FORM: MANNER, MODIFYING VERBS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of manner adverbs to modify verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You have to choose carefully.*

*My smile slowly disappeared as I finished my reading.*

*She looked at me seriously and said "Can you sing a song right now?"*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You have to choose carefully.*

*My smile slowly disappeared as I finished my reading.*

*She looked at me seriously and said "Can you sing a song right now?"*

## ADVERBS AS MODIFIERS

### USE: CERTAINTY

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs to indicate degrees of certainty.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a film] And it will probably be on TV next month!*

*If I were you I'd certainly choose not to go with your parents.*

*I will definitely give you the bicycle by 5.30 pm or latest by 5.45 pm.*

[C1] Can use a wide range of adverbs to indicate degrees of certainty.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was undoubtedly an unforgettable experience.*

*Television programmes are undeniably a way of keeping ourselves well-informed and open to a special knowledge of every aspect of our lives.*

*I bought a skirt, a pair of jeans and a white dress, because I absolutely need new clothes for your party!*

### USE: DEGREE WITH VERBS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of degree adverbs ('a little', 'a bit') with verbs to indicate degree or intensity. ► determiners

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When I came to England, one year ago, I didn't know any English word, now I'm very happy because I don't speak very well but I can understand and speak a little.  
I suggest you to take a little break of about one minute between hours and walk to relax a bit.  
I go to bed and I read just a little bit.*

### USE: DEGREE, 'REALLY REALLY'

[B1] Can use 'really really' with verbs and adjectives for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Oh, I really really like her very friendly and lovely smile.  
I am not keen on football so, I think it is really really boring.*

### USE: DEGREE, WITH ADJECTIVES

[C1] Can use a wide range of adverbs with adjectives to express degree or intensity.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It deals with the friendship between two completely different men.  
It is extremely important that the project is finished before September.  
The last thing I would like to mention is that you have lost a single passenger's luggage three times, which is totally unacceptable.*

### USE: DISTANCING

[C2] Can use adverbs mid clause, to distance the writer from what they are saying.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He came out from school at the age of 16, and joined the "Universidad xxx" – the best one in Chile, supposedly – to study Economics  
The author of the letter apparently has no experience of being a parent in our times.  
He was quite nice to me, surprisingly and he told him that he would do his best but that the music was not too loud.*

### Comments

While we see these adverbs being used as stance devices at C1 it is the emergence of them in mid clause position, and with a distancing function, which increases at C2 level.

### USE: FOCUS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of focusing adverbs ('particularly', 'especially') to point to or highlight something. ► adverbs: position

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I usually read in my free time but particularly in the evenings before I go to the bed.  
As you know I love dolphins and all programmes about Nature and Wild life, especially the Discovery Channel.*

### USE: LINKING

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs ('therefore', 'furthermore', 'otherwise') to show a relationship between two clauses or sentences.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*You don't like city's with a lot of people. Therefore I suggest you go to a small school in the countryside, near your new home.*

*I decided to join these classes because I have to improve my reading, writing and speaking in English. Furthermore I want to write my thesis in an English-speaking country next year.*

*(Austria; B1 THRESHOLD; 2002; German; Pass).*

*Please let me know if you can collect it otherwise I will ask my other Turkish friend.*

### **USE: MANNER**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of manner adverbs and adverb phrases to modify how something happens.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*They are like my sisters. We go everywhere together.*

*You are a sweet and caring guy and wherever you'll go, you'll fit in easily!*

*Of course you have to eat carefully.*

*Then I took a knife and opened it very carefully and slowly like there was something breakable in it.*

[B2] Can use a wide range of manner adverbs to modify how something happens.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*She realises that he is a very dangerous man and that she should take his warning seriously.*

*Today I read the notice "Volunteers needed urgently " and I would like to be one.*

*As our parking space has been used illegally by the public, we will change our parking system.*

### **USE: ORGANISING**

[B1] Can use adverbs as discourse markers to organise text. ► adverbs: position ► Discourse markers

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Firstly, I advise you to visit both schools.*

*Firstly, we need a good expert to run the course.*

*Secondly, good materials are needed.*

*What's more, this topic is very useful, it could offer so many professional suggestions .*

*Finally , in my opinion, this topic is very interesting.*

*My boss' talk will be about the advantages and drawbacks which overseas sells bring . Actually , he is very interested in this subject because our company is trying to expand and sell abroad.*

### **USE: PLACE**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs and adverb phrases ('near', 'far away', 'upstairs', 'downstairs') to indicate place.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*You can't go far away because I don't think your parents want to pay for it.*

*He went downstairs.*

*After the film we went to a shop nearby for lunch and after that we went to a park and played all sorts of games.*



## USE: STANCE

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs ('completely', 'obviously', 'clearly', 'actually', 'luckily', 'honestly', 'sadly', 'basically', 'obviously', 'hopefully') to indicate an attitude or viewpoint.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am completely sure.*

*It's obviously much more fun to go on vacation with your friends, but your parents will be sad and worry about you all the time you're gone.*

*I am clearly a fashion victim and it's not a fault.*

*Actually she's my best friend I met her this year when the school started.*

*Luckily my cousin is now recovering of his illness and all my family is really happy.*

*I don't watch a lot of TV, sadly I don't have time.*

*Surely it depends where your family goes, and where you are going to go with your friends!*

[C1] Can use a wide range of stance adverbs (simply, truly, surely, apparently, naturally, surprisingly, inevitably, literally, exceptionally, frankly, clearly, amazingly, wisely, admittedly) to indicate an attitude or viewpoint, often in clause initial position.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Obviously everybody has the right to be on a strike.*

*We can't truly blame ourselves for this unlucky beginning.*

*Apparently someone made a mistake writing the details I gave over the phone.*

*Naturally, I inclined towards the second option.*

*Luckily for me, I stayed with a kind and helpful host family but they lived four miles from the school.*

## USE: TIME

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs to refer to the timing of an event.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Dear Kate, I went to the cinema with a new friend recently.*

*I immediately called her to see if everything was O.K.*

[B2] Can use a wide range of adverbs and adverb phrases to refer to the timing of an event.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I look forward hearing from you shortly and I thank you in advance.*

*It sounded like a muffled laugh, and she instantly recognised it as her mother's.*

*It isn't the job you will do permanently.*

*You know it's very difficult to decide what to buy if you need both things simultaneously.*

*The trend that has appeared rather recently and is very common among young people nowadays is named "casual chique".*

## POSITION

### FORM/USE: FRONT POSITION, INVERSION WITH 'NEVER'

[B2] Can use 'never' in front position followed by an inverted subject (most commonly 'I') + main verb verb, to give focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Never have I seen such a realistic and impressive film before.*  
*Never had I thought that my parents would do this to me.*

#### FORM/USE: FRONT POSITION, INVERSION, WITH 'HARDLY'

[C2] Can use 'hardly' in front position followed by an inverted subject and verb, to give focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Hardly had he reached his front door when he heard the phone ringing.*  
*Hardly had she finished her complaints when Bob stood up, paid and left.*  
*Hardly had they arrived when they saw a sleek, black car leaving the house's yard.*

### Comments

This is a very low frequency form in L1 data and restricted to literary contexts. NB it is more frequent in the learner data than in the L1 data.

#### FORM/USE: MID POSITION, DISTANCING

[C2] Can use adverbs in mid position, to distance the writer from what they are saying.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In all actuality Piggy himself theoretically has all the necessary character traits and skills at his disposal that would ensure he would be an effective leader.*  
*For the houses opposite the cargo area we strongly support the idea of a "green" wall, as it was mentioned in the report of the town council but surprisingly seems to have been forgotten afterwards.*

### Comments

While we see these adverbs being used as stance devices at C1, it is the emergence of them in mid clause position, and with a distancing function, which increases at C2 level.

## CLAUSES

### COMPARATIVES

#### FORM/USE: 'AS ... AS'

[B1] Can use '(not) as' + adjective/adverb + 'as' to introduce a clause (often with a substitute auxiliary verb) to talk about two things being equal or unequal in some way.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When I come back from the hospital, I will try to cover the work as much as I can.*  
*The weather is the best, it is not as cold as I expected, it is just perfect.*  
*Now I've bought a computer and I'm not watching T.V. as often as I did.*  
*I really don't like trousers as much as you do.*

#### FORM/USE: 'RATHER THAN' + PHRASE

[B1] Can use 'rather than' + noun phrase or prepositional phrase to stress one element in a comparison.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Use the stairs rather than the lift, the bike rather than the tube and whenever you've got enough time, try running around the neighbourhood in the morning before going to work.  
Well, to me, it's better going to a large school, rather than a small one.  
Eat healthy foods rather than fatty foods.*

### FORM/USE: 'SO ... AS TO', FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'so' + adjective + 'as' + 'to'–infinitive clause, usually in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Travellers should not be so ignorant as to think they can understand other nationalities better when they have once lived in one of their hotels.  
However, as soon as my glaring eyes met his, beseeching and helpless, I knew I couldn't endure being so cruel as to deny him my caring shoulder...  
Should I be so fortunate as to win the scholarship, I would use it in a way that would not only affect me, but very much so also the area in which I live.*

### FORM/USE: 'THE BEST (THAT)'

[B1] Can use 'the best (that)' followed by a clause with the present perfect to talk about something unique.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's the best place that I have ever seen.  
Well, the best decision that I've ever made was the decision to go to France for a year.  
I think that's why this was the best decision I've ever made.*

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE AFTER 'THAN'

[B1] Can use 'than' + a limited range of non-finite clauses (with -ing), forming the second part of a comparison after a comparative adjective

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Well, if I were you I would go to a small school in the countryside because it's less complicated than going to a large school in a town.  
But if they refuse, you should go with your friends, because it will be more interesting than spending your holiday with parents.  
Going away with friends will be more fun than sitting at home, so you should go with them.*

### FORM/USE: SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE (+ 'THAT')

[B2] Can use a superlative adjective (+ noun) (+ 'that') followed by a clause to talk about something unique.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was probably the best comedy that anyone could ever have made; however, to the ones who were in the cinema, it didn't seem like a comedy but a horror film.  
In my opinion this is the worst thing that can ever happen.  
That is the clearest thing I can remember.  
We have developed a new micro processor which is the fastest and smallest that exists at the moment.*

### FORM: 'AS IF' + NON-FINITE CLAUSE

[C2] Can use 'as if' + non-finite clause to introduce a second clause as a comparison.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She closed her eyes as if to push those thoughts away.*

*There it was: the chef's body, hacked to pieces, a carving knife in his hand as if to scare off an enemy.*

*I was so frightened that my heart was beating like crazy as if trying to leave my body.*

*Because of this, my mother never denied us anything, as if trying to compensate for our father's death.*

### Comments

This is a very low frequency form. There were no instances of 'as though' + finite clauses in the CLC. As 'though' + finite clause is a relatively low frequency pattern in native speaker use (0.2 occurrences per million in CIC).

### FORM: 'AS IF' OR 'AS THOUGH' + FINITE CLAUSE

[B2] Can use 'as if' or 'as though' + finite clause to introduce a second clause as a comparison.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Her heart beat extremely fast, as if it was going to burst out of her chest.*

*I saw my mate crawling on the floor as if he was looking for something.*

*Everything was so familiar, so close, as though he had never left the place.*

### Comments

as if is much more frequent than as though

### FORM: 'RATHER THAN' + NON-FINITE CLAUSE

[B2] Can use 'rather than' + a non-finite clause to stress one element in a comparison.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you prefer watching TV rather than reading, you have to be critical: you mustn't in any way accept everything, every image that passes in front of your eyes.*

*I would say that we are keen on walking in the mountains rather than going on a shopping trip to Edinburgh.*

*So, at night they are mostly tired and it's much easier to sit down in front of the television set rather than take a book and read it.*

*I would prefer to sleep in tents rather than stay in rooms.*

### FORM: 'SO' + ADJECTIVE + 'THAT' CLAUSE

[B1] Can use 'so' + adjective + 'that' clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was so tired that I didn't have the strength to stand up and ask him for a photograph.*

*I was so nervous that when the teacher talked to me, I shouted to answer him!*

### FORM: 'THE SAME' (+ NOUN) + 'AS' + CLAUSE

[B2] Can use 'the same' (+ noun) + 'as' + clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Maybe I'll do the same thing as you did.*

*She was the same as I remembered her, long-haired and green-eyed.*

*Some people say that friendship today is not the same as it used to be.*

## Comments

The clause following 'as' is often a short form.

### FORM: 'THE SAME' (+ NOUN) + 'AS' + PRONOUN OR NOUN

[B1] Can use 'the same' (+ noun) + 'as' + pronoun or noun.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I wasn't the only one in my class, there were many others at the same level as me.*

*In my opinion it's better to be with people who are the same age as you.*

*You like the same things as your friends.*

*When I read your letter, it reminded me of a problem I had ... and which was almost the same as yours.*

### FORM: 'TOO' + 'TO'-INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use 'too' + adjective + 'to'-infinitive.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*First of all, I think you are too young to go on holiday by yourself.*

*He always told me that he was too busy to write a letter to me.*

### FORM: ADJECTIVE + 'ENOUGH' + 'TO'-INFINITIVE

[B2] Can use 'enough' after adjectives followed by 'to'-infinitive.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*In my opinion young people at that age are not mature enough to decide by themselves what they want for their future.*

*I think I am responsible enough to handle this job.*

### FORM: COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE + 'THAN' + NON-FINITE CLAUSE

[B2] .||Can use than + an increasing range of non-finite clauses (to-infinitive, reduced clause) forming the second part of a comparison after a comparative adjective||

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is much easier to be single than to have a partner.*

*Due to the provisions and considerations of the contract which was never revised, I think that arbitration is more appropriate than to file an action in court against the tenant.*

*It performs better than expected and attracts many new customers, especially during the week.*

### FORM: FINITE AFTER 'THAN'

[B1] Can use 'than' + a finite clause forming the second part of a comparison after a comparative adjective

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I wish our schools could become better than they are.*

*He is almost 60 years old, but he's faster than you can imagine.*

*The price of the delivery company we are now using is a little bit higher than we expected.*

*The floor is dark but the walls are white, so the room seems to be bigger than it is really.*

### FORM: LINKING VERB + 'LIKE' OR 'SIMILAR TO'

[B1] Can use linking verbs + 'like' or 'similar to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Some people have told me that I look like a pop star when I wear it.*

*First he heard a disconcerting noise that sounded like a gun shot and then he saw a man running away holding a gun.*

*It smelled like roses.*

*Everything seemed tiny and small from above and I felt like a bird.*

*Your story is similar to my last dream.*

*The weather is sunny and hot, it's similar to Valencia's weather.*

### Comments

There are examples with 'be like' at A2 and then a broadening of use with other linking verbs at B1.

### FORM: SENSE VERBS + 'AS IF' OR 'AS THOUGH' + FINITE CLAUSE

[B1] Can use verbs of the senses + 'as if' or 'as though' + finite clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was excited and I felt as if I was a bird.*

*So when you enter the restaurant you feel as if you are in Italy.*

*I think I will have to buy an umbrella because it looks as if it'll rain.*

*I got your letter last Friday, and it looks as if you've got a problem.*

*I enjoyed it a lot because as it was built many years ago. I felt as though I was in the year 1830!*

### Comments

As if examples are much more frequent than as though examples

### FORM: SUPERLATIVE ADVERB 'BEST' + CLAUSE

[C1] Can use 'the best' as a superlative adverb + pronoun + ellipted 'can' or 'could'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm sorry to say that she is not the best of cooks but she tries the best she can.*

*On Thursday I did the best I could.*

*However, to make sure that we offer the best we can, we would be grateful if you gave us a grant.*

### Comments

Most instances follow the form [verb] + 'the best' + [pronoun] + ['can/could'] (main verb ellipted)

## CONDITIONAL

### FORM/USE: 'IF I WERE YOU' + 'WOULD', FUTURE, IMAGINED SITUATION

[B1] Can use 'if I were you' and 'would' in the main clause often in the context of advice or opinion-giving.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Well, if I were you I would go to a small school in the countryside because it's less complicated than going to a large school in a town.*

*If I were you, I would talk to everybody and tell them when are you free, and spend the summer with both friends and parents.*

*[deciding between two holiday options] If I were you, I would accept both of them.*

### FORM/USE: 'IF IT WERE NOT FOR', FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'If it weren't / were not for' + noun phrase to introduce conditions in formal contexts. ► past simple

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If it weren't for that boy, I am definitely certain that I would have failed the examinations and I would have ended up taking the class again the following year.*

*If it weren't for his determination, he would have resigned when he first heard "no".*

### FORM/USE: 'IF IT WERE' + 'TO'–INFINITIVE FORM, FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'If it were' + 'to-' infinitive to introduce conditions in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If it were to be published, the first issue would probably include a small introduction about the people who helped in the creation of the magazine.*

*However displacing such a number of commuters will need a lot of planning and a very good infrastructure if it were to succeed.*

### FORM/USE: 'IF' + 'SHOULD', FORMAL, POLITE

[C1] Can form subordinate conditional clauses with 'if you should', in polite, formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you should have any concerns about my choice, please tell me.*

*If you should have any problems, you can go to an information booth and you will be told which train you have to take to Hassau.*

*If you should get lost, don't hesitate to call us.*

*If you should have any further questions do not hesitate to contact us.*

### Comments

Many but not all main clauses which follow 'if' + 'should' are imperatives, particularly in business contexts.

### FORM/USE: 'IF' + PAST PERFECT + 'WOULD HAVE' + '-ED', IMAGINED SITUATION, REGRET|(THIRD CONDITIONAL)

[B1] Can form conditional subordinate clauses with 'if' + past perfect simple and 'would have' + '-ed' in the main clause, to talk about imagined situations in the past, often with regret.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If they had not been there, I would have been very lonely.*

*If I hadn't gone to these horse-riding lessons, I wouldn't have lost my watch.*

*I realise that if I hadn't agreed with my parents to go to the concert I wouldn't have met Britney Spears.*

### Comments

This is often taught at B2 but there is sufficient evidence in the CLC to show that learners are successfully using it at B1.

### FORM/USE: 'IF' + PAST PERFECT + MODAL VERBS IMAGINED SITUATION, REGRET

[C1] Can form conditional subordinate clauses with if + the past perfect simple and modal verb + 'have' + '-ed' in the main clause, to talk about imagined situations in the past, often with regret.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*All this could have been avoided, if the plan had been more flexible.*

*Several statements in the newspaper could have been avoided, if the writer had taken notice of the income results which were sent along with the other facts from the charity day.*

*However, I think I could have learned more if more individual tuition had been available.*

*I wrote this article referring to my own experience in London, hence I might have had a different opinion if I had gone to another city or country.*

### Comments

could have +-ed is the most frequent form in the main clause after would have + -ed. There are very few examples with might have + -ed|Note on punctuation: many grammar books stress that when the if clause precedes the main clause, it must use a comma. We cannot establish a consistent competency for this (and punctuation in general). It seems too idiosyncratic. L1 can be a skewing factor

### FORM/USE: 'IF' + PAST SIMPLE + 'COULD', FUTURE, IMAGINED SITUATION

[B1] Can form conditional subordinate clauses with 'if' + past simple, and 'could' in the main clause to talk about an imagined situation, often in the context of suggesting.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you wanted to do some outdoor activities, we could go fishing or even walking through the green fields.*

*If you arrived in town the day before, we could arrange accommodation for you at the nearest Hotel.*

### FORM/USE: 'IF' + PAST SIMPLE + 'WOULD', FUTURE, IMAGINED SITUATION|(SECOND CONDITIONAL)

[B1] Can form conditional subordinate clauses with 'if' + past simple, and would in the main clause, to talk about an imagined situation, often in the context of advice or opinion-giving.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Maybe it would be more fun if you went with your friends.*

*If you went on holiday with your friends, where would you go?*

*But, if I was able to move, I would like to live near the coast, because I love the sea, I like sunbathing and swimming.*

### FORM/USE: 'UNLESS', EXCEPTIONS

[B1] Can use 'unless' + present simple to talk about an exception, with present and future reference.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think I am going to pay by cash, unless you accept credit cards.*

*If I were you I'd go to work on foot, unless it's far away from your house.*

*But unless you do some sports activities you will gain a lot of weight.*

### FORM/USE: 'WERE IT NOT FOR', FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'Were it not for' + noun phrase to introduce conditions in formal contexts. ► past simple

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Were it not for my university, I would give up this class immediately.*

*Were it not for that kind of toy, children would be able to gain more team-spirit, creativity and self-confidence.*

*In fact, were it not for that reason, Laura would have accepted the comfortable executive chair in a big company.*

### FORM/USE: 'WHETHER OR NOT', FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'whether or not' to introduce conditions in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Whether or not the visitors should imitate local customs and behaviour is definitely a debatable issue.*

*Whether or not it is better to educate boys and girls in separate schools has been a widely discussed issue in recent years.*

*Whether or not richer countries should help these poor nations is a very controversial issue, there are people on both sides of the argument who have very strong feelings.*

*However, it depends only on the children whether or not they'll go to a university and there are many factors to be considered before deciding on going.*

### FORM/USE: ELLIPTED 'IF NOT', ALTERNATIVE

[B1] Can use 'If not' as a conditional clause to offer an alternative to refer to a previous direct or indirect 'yes-no' question where the answer might be 'no?.'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Is the Sheraton Hotel ok for you? If not, call me as soon as possible.*

*Do you work on Sundays? If not, you could do exercise on Sundays.*

*I hope it's ok for you. If not, call me on my mobile phone.*

### FORM/USE: ELLIPTED 'IF SO', CONFIRMING

[B1] Can use 'If so' as a conditional clause to refer a previous direct or indirect 'yes-no' question where the answer might be 'yes?'. ► Clauses coordinated

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Do you think we could have an extra class? If so, I'd like to do it to cover the work I'll miss.*

*Is it possible to pay by credit card? If so, which ones do you take?*

### FORM/USE: INVERTED 'WERE' + 'TO' INFINITIVE, FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'were' with an inverted subject + 'to' infinitive, to introduce conditions in formal contexts. ► past simple

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Were I to win this travel scholarship, the country of my choice would be Japan.*

*Were you to compare people's views on animals to their views on food, you would find many similarities.*

*Were someone to decide that he did not want to go to university, he would have to face the consequences of his choice.*

*Were this suggestion to be put into practice, our town's personality would change completely from a small town to a port of call for a large number of visitors.*

### Comments

Note this is instead of 'If' + pronoun + 'were to' infinitive? so it involves ellipsis and inversion.

### FORM/USE: INVERTED PAST PERFECT, IMAGINED PAST

[C2] Can use past perfect + inverted subject, and a modal verb + 'have' + '-ed' in the main clause to talk about imagined situations in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Had he been more experienced he would have known that these things always happen in this part of the world.*

*Had we known this fact we would have organised more activities within school hours.*

*Had we learnt from the mistakes of the past, we would have given up fighting each other a long time ago.*

*Had I known so many people from abroad were coming to visit our stand, I would have studied harder during my private lessons in the past.*

*Had this file fallen into enemy hands, it might have had disastrous effects on the Western world.*

*Had public transportation been an option I would have chosen that instead of my car.*

### Comments

Note on punctuation: many grammar books stress that when the 'if' clause precedes the main clause, it must use a comma. We cannot establish a consistent competency for this (and punctuation in general). It seems too idiosyncratic. L1 can be a skewing factor

### FORM/USE: PRESENT CONTINUOUS 'IF' CLAUSE , PLANS & ADVICE

[B1] Can use 'if' + present continuous or 'going to' to introduce a possible plan, with modal verbs or imperatives in the main clause to give advice.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Billy, if you are moving you should think a lot, first you have to go and see the two schools.*

*However, if you are looking for fun and excitement, I would go for the city.*

*But if you are going to live in a town you should choose the large school.*

*In addition, if you are going to travel, please choose your partner very carefully.*

### FORM/USE: PRESENT SIMPLE 'IF' CLAUSE + 'WILL', FUTURE, LIKELY OUTCOME (FIRST CONDITIONAL)

[B1] Can use 'if' + present simple to introduce a possible future condition, with 'will' in the main clause to talk about a likely result.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I talked to my parents and I think if you tell them your reasons, they will accept it.  
I'm sure your parents will be happy if you go with them.  
If you live in the countryside you will see beautiful nature.*

### Comments

Note on punctuation: many grammar books stress that when the 'if' clause precedes the main clause, it must use a comma. We cannot establish a consistent competency for this (and punctuation in general). It seems too idiosyncratic. L1 can be a skewing factor.

### FORM/USE: PRESENT SIMPLE 'IF' CLAUSE + MODAL, FUTURE, POSSIBLE OUTCOME

[B1] Can use 'if' + present simple to introduce a possible future condition, with modal verbs in the main clause, to talk about a possible result. ► modality

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think that it would be very good if you start going to the gym or you start cycling.  
I would be very glad if you come and visit us.  
If you come to Brazil you can stay at my home.*

### Comments

L1 users frequently use combinations of different tenses and forms in the if-clause and main clause, as shown in these examples. The traditional second conditional form can be seen below.

### FORM/USE: SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS, CONDITIONS

[B2] Can use conditional subordinate clauses with a range of conjunctions ('as long as', 'provided') + present simple or present continuous, with future reference.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As long as it involves children I'd be delighted to work for you during the summer.  
If you're really eager to learn age doesn't really matter as long as you're willing to learn.  
My client will most certainly ask for compensation covering all losses incurred, unless you manage to find out where the goods are.  
Finally, I am pleased to inform you that we would like to offer a 10% discount provided you reserve office space for eighteen months.  
Providing we implement the suggested actions I believe we can increase sales within the next six months, overcoming the current situation caused by the international situation.  
I would suggest that you might bring a city map in case you lose your way.*

### Comments

While unless is a B1 lexical item in the EVP and taught at B1, its conditional use is not established until B2. Note also that unless is very error prone at B1. | Note on punctuation: many grammar books stress that when the if clause precedes the main clause, it must use a comma. We cannot establish a consistent competency for this (and punctuation in general). It seems too idiosyncratic. L1 can be a skewing factor

[C2] Can use conditional subordinate clauses with a range of conjunctions ('so long as', 'on condition that', 'in the event that') with past, present or future reference. |

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As a matter of fact, education is free and as a result they can attend whichever university they desire so long as they have the proper qualifications, of course.*

*I was allowed to bring my friends home and go out with them on condition that my parents knew where I was and when I was going to return.*

### Comments

Note that these are low frequency items.

## FORM: ELLIPTED 'IF' CLAUSE

[C1] Can form ellipted 'if' clauses with 'if' + '-ed' form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Furthermore I found little rooms where an employee could take a short nap if needed.*

*Meals are served, if requested, three times a day, unless picnic lunches are needed.*

*Women who want to start a career more often decide to be single or, if married, don't devote much time to the family.*

## FORM: INVERTED CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, 'SHOULD'

[C1] Can introduce a conditional subordinate clause with 'should' + inverted subject.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Should you require any further information about the program or any other detail please do not hesitate to ask for it.*

*Should there be a lack of mutual understanding a break-up is unavoidable.*

## USE: INVERTED 'SHOULD', FUTURE, POSSIBLE OUTCOME, FORMAL, POLITE

[C2] Can use inverted 'should', + 'would' in the main clause to talk about possible future outcomes, in polite or formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Should we win your prize we would like to build a new school close to our production center, for the children of the area.*

*Should you fail to do so, we would have no choice but to take further action.*

### Comments

This structure is similar to the second conditional structure.

## COORDINATED

### FORM/USE: 'NEITHER ... NOR', EMPHASIS

[B2] Can combine two main clauses of the same type using 'neither' in front or mid position, followed by 'nor' to introduce the second clause, for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We neither walk nor do exercises.*

*They neither got married nor had children.*

*We should neither eat too much, nor eat too.*

### Comments

The writer chooses this structure so as to add emphasis. The less emphatic alternative to 'We neither walk nor do exercises' is 'We don't walk or do exercises'.

**FORM/USE: 'NOT ONLY ... BUT (ALSO)' WITH INVERSION, FOCUS**

[C1] Can combine clauses using 'not only' in front position followed by an inverted first clause + ... 'but (also)' to introduce the second clause, to give focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*And not only did they come for the most popular sports, such as football and basketball, but many other less known activities were very well attended.*

*Not only was he helpful but the students had the opportunity to watch videos and listen to music.*

*Not only has the cost improved, but also the value for money.*

**FORM/USE: 'NOT ONLY ... BUT (ALSO)', FOCUS**

[B2] Can combine clauses using 'not only' in mid position of the first clause followed by ... 'but (also)' to introduce the second clause, to give focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The atmosphere was friendly, not only because it wasn't too crowded, but also because the waiters always help you.*

*I really like it; not only because it is nice and colourful but because I spent most of my childhood summers there.*

**FORM/USE: MULTIPLE MAIN CLAUSES, NARRATIVE**

[B1] Can combine multiple main clauses with a range of conjunctions, often in a narrative context.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*By the time his mother arrived home, the suitcase was still lost, so Larry decided to tell her the truth, but then his mother showed him his suitcase and told Larry that he left it in the car.*

*If you want to go somewhere with your friends then do it and promise your parents that you will go with them the next holidays, or arrange a family day with them, because then your parents will know that you love them and that they are still very important to you.*

**Comments**

This is common in informal spoken language in NS data.

**FORM/USE: NEGATIVE CLAUSE + 'NOR', FOCUS**

[C2] Can combine a negative clause with an inverted clause with 'nor', to give focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*That night Kevin did not sleep; nor did Kristin.*

*They do not have any hobbies, nor do they have friends or relatives (at least not where they live).*

*Her diary was never found, nor was Juliette.*

*I should never have agreed to meet him, after all I didn't know the man nor did I understand what he was talking about, but he really said my friend Peter was in danger, that's what made me say yes.*

**Comments**

Note this pattern is without 'neither' and hence differs from the B2 level pattern. Also, note the inversion.

### FORM: 'EITHER ... OR'

[B1] Can combine two main clauses of the same type using 'either' in front or mid position, followed by 'or' to introduce the second clause.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Regarding your future plans, we would like to know which city you are going to move to, so that if we get the chance, we can either visit you or write to you.*

*In my opinion, you should either ask your parents if you can invite a few friends, or ask them to share your holidays.*

*You can either go to the gym or attend some special classes where you get gentle exercises. I thought: "Either I talk to her now or I won't be able to talk to her anytime!"*

### FORM: COMBINING CLAUSES OF THE SAME TYPE

[B1] Can combine clauses of the same type, main or subordinate, finite or non-finite, with conjunctions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You will have a great time with your friends, because I know they are going to the seaside and staying in a hotel near the sea.*

*They chose our school because it's very modern and there are a lot of students.*

*Otherwise, if you want to relax and see your friend, the countryside will be the best.*

*You asked for my advice about either going on holiday with your parents or staying with your friends.*

#### Comments

There is a greater range of clauses that are being combined at B2. For example: But it is a deciding question if animals are held to widen our human understanding and for instance to create new remedies to cure people from illnesses or if they are held just to amuse the people. (561803\_2; FCE; Germany; B2 VANTAGE; 1993; German)

## DECLARATIVE

### FORM/USE: AUXILIARY 'DO', FOR EMPHASIS

[B1] Can use the auxiliary verb 'do' in an affirmative declarative clause, for emphasis and affirmation.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Yes, I do have a favorite restaurant.*

*I do miss you.*

*I do apologise for the change but I can't be there on the 28th of June.*

*After all, you did say that you wanted to go somewhere with your friends.*

## IMPERATIVES

### FORM/USE: 'DO NOT', EMPHASIS

[B2] Can use 'do not' for emphasis or in formal contexts.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Do not forget to have a break at lunchtime and try to eat your meal whenever possible in a silent room.*

*Do not hesitate to contact me should you need further information.*

**FORM/USE: 'DO', EMPHASIS**

[B1] Can use 'do' + base form of a main verb, for emphasis or in formal contexts.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Do write back and let me know all your news.*

*Do let me know your views on this.*

*Do follow the instructions.*

**FORM/USE: 'DON'T YOU ...'**

[C2] Can use you with an imperative form to make an instruction stronger.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Don't you ever do that again!*

*Don't you dare!*

*Don't you dare forget me, I want letters from you promptly, understand!*

**FORM/USE: 'LET ME', FOCUS**

[B1] Can use an imperative clause with 'let me' + base form of a main verb, as a focusing device, to introduce something

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Let me tell you my story.*

*Let me explain something.*

*Let me answer your question.*

**FORM/USE: 'LET' + THIRD PERSON PRONOUN, DEVOLVING RESPONSIBILITY**

[C2] Can use an imperative clause with 'let' + 'him/her/them' + base form of a main verb, to devolve responsibility.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Let them find their own food.*

*But she put aside her friends because she didn't want to be pitied. After few attempts her friends gave up. "Let her live alone".*

*So let them be and let them scrutinize the peculiar events that do occur in life.*

**Comments**

This is a very low frequency use of this form and it occurs in negative contexts.

**FORM/USE: 'LET' + THIRD PERSON PRONOUN, PERMISSION, ORDER**

[C1] Can use an imperative clause with 'let' + 'him/her/them' + base form of a main verb, to give permission or allow something or instruct someone to allow something.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Try to play chess with him whenever you can and remember: Let him win!*

*While in London, they want to do their shopping there, so let them have more free time to do that.*

*If she wants to study away from home, please, let her go.*

**FORM/USE: 'LET'S NOT', SUGGESTION**

[B2] Can use 'let's not' + base form of a main verb to make a suggestion.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Let's not lose track of each other again!*

*Let's not forget that zoos actually help us keep dying species alive ....*

*Let's not make the situation more complicated with companies and things like that.*

### FORM/USE: DON'T 'LET' + PRONOUN, PERMISSION, ORDER

[C1] Can use an imperative clause with 'let' + 'him/her/them' + base form of a main verb, to disallow something or instruct someone to disallow something.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Don't let them spend all their free time in front of the TV.*

*Don't let him go out alone, because he may not feel well.*

### FORM/USE: IMPERATIVE + 'AND' CONDITIONAL

[C1] Can use imperatives to introduce a condition followed by 'and' to introduce a consequence of the condition.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*See one of them and you'll want to see them all.*

### USE: INVITATION

[B1] Can use the imperative to make an offer or an invitation.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Come and visit us after the New Year, we've got so much to talk about.*

*Come and stay with us this weekend!*

### Comments

This is more likely in spoken contexts. There is no evidence of imperative form with indefinite subject, e.g. someone tell me, everyone stand still etc.

### USE: POINTING, IN FORMAL CONTEXTS

[C1] Can use imperatives to point within or to a document within formal contexts, often academic.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*See enclosed brochure.*

*As you requested in your memo, I have spent the past few days gathering information from the six students involved in our programme (see above).*

*Look at the graph of the Agricultural sector 1991-2001.*

## INTERROGATIVES

### FORM: 'WH-' INTERROGATIVE, SUBJECT

[B1] Can form questions with a 'wh-' word as subject, without an auxiliary verb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What happened?*

*Who cares?*

*Who knows?*

### Comments

Results dominated by Spanish/ Portuguese. Note that these are generally spoken forms.



## FORM: 'WHICH', 'WHOSE'

### Comments

There are no examples in the whole CLC of 'which/whose' + subject noun + verb e.g. 'Which horse won? Whose phone rang?'

## FORM: INTERROGATIVE + ADVERB

[B1] Can form interrogative clauses with an adverb in mid position, between the subject and the main verb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Have you ever been to Marseille?*

*What kind of books do you usually read?*

*Do you still remember my best friend?*

## FORM: NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE + ADVERB

[B2] Can form negative interrogative clauses with an adverb in mid position, between the subject and the main verb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Money – hasn't it always been one of the most important problems for students?*

*Why don't you ever listen to me?*

*Haven't you ever heard about the photographer Donatela and the painter Christian?*

## PHRASES/EXCLAMATIONS

### FORM/USE: NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE

[B2] Can use the negative interrogative form of an auxiliary verb to express surprise or enthusiasm.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Wouldn't it be wonderful!*

*Doesn't that sound excellent to you?!*

### Comments

No evidence of other auxiliary verbs in this structure. Very low frequency because of lack of spoken data.

### FORM: 'HOW' + ADJECTIVE

[B1] Can use 'How' + adjective.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*How exciting!*

*How terrible!*

*How amazing! This is my first flight in a hot-air balloon.*

### FORM: 'HOW' + ADJECTIVE + CLAUSE

[B1] Can use 'How' + adjective + clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*How lucky you are to have visited that exhibition!*

*How lovely to get your letter.*

**FORM: 'HOW' + ADVERB + CLAUSE**

[C2] Can use 'How' + adverb + clause.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*How differently we were brought up by our mother.*

**Comments**

Very low frequency form, usually used in formal, particularly literary, contexts.

**FORM: 'HOW' + CLAUSE**

[C2] Can use 'How' + clause.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*How I often longed to play with the other children or relax with a good book.*

*How I love the smell of home!*

*How I long to be there again.*

**Comments**

Very low frequency form, usually used in formal, particularly literary, contexts.

**RELATIVE****FORM/USE: 'THE REASON WHY', FOCUS**

[B1] Can use defining relative clauses with 'why' after 'reason', to give an explanation and for focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The reason why I love it is that it's quite original because it's about a woman who can see ghosts.*

*This is the reason why we are changing our working hours.*

*This is the main reason why it is so famous and popular as well.*

**FORM/USE: 'THE' + NOUN + 'WHO/THAT', FOCUS**

[B1] Can use defining relative clauses, 'the person who/that, the thing that, the (only) one who/that' as a focusing device.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The thing that was great is that the weather was really warm and it didn't rain.*

*The thing that I love most is going to the shops.*

*The person who sat next to me was her.*

*The person who called me was my best friend.*

**Comments**

There is not a great spread of L1s. Very romance language dominated.

**FORM/USE: 'WHEN', FOCUS**

[B1] Can use defining relative clauses with 'when' to define nouns relating to time.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The day when he had to go back to Korea, I could not stop myself crying.*

*I really remember the day when I lost my suitcase in the airport.*

*I was in the class at the time when they made the movie, so you will be able to see me on TV.*

**FORM/USE: DEFINING, WITH 'WHOSE'**

[B2] Can use defining relative clauses with 'whose', to give more information about relationship.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I visited several primary schools in Canberra and had opportunities to teach not only Australian children but also Vietnamese children whose parents immigrated to Australia.  
Mary is a young lady whose parents had died and she had nobody else but an aunt to live with.*

**FORM/USE: SENTENCE, EVALUATIVE**

[B2] Can use a relative clause to refer to a whole clause or sentence, often to express an opinion or evaluation or give a reason.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*It is now possible to send a letter and receive an answer within ten minutes, which is a good thing if you want to buy a house, a car etc.  
In addition, zoological gardens allow us to get to know the lifestyles of some animals better, which is very important from the point of view of their protection.  
I have also visited the dance shows and the art exhibitions, as well as the talks by writers, which were all really brilliant.*

**Comments**

This is much more frequent in informal spoken language.

**FORM: DEFINING, OBJECT, WITH 'WHO/THAT'**

[B1] Can use a defining relative clause with 'who' or 'that' as the object.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*My friends are the people who I love most.  
They filmed two actors who I don't really know arguing and kissing after it.  
It was Sarah, a girl who I met in Spain on my holiday last year.  
We are going with my friends Paolo and Ontorio, the guys who you met yesterday.  
So I sent a letter to the school and they have sent me the details of the people that I'm going to stay with.*

**FORM: NON-DEFINING, OBJECT, WITH 'WHO'**

[B1] Can use a non-defining relative clause with 'who' as the object.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*What I liked most was the friend I made there, a green-eyed chubby boy, who I played with till dinner time, when I had to go home.  
She turned around and, she couldn't believe it, it was an old classmate Tom, who she hadn't seen for ages!*

**FORM: NON-DEFINING, WITH 'WHOSE'**

[B2] Can use non-defining relative clauses with 'whose', to give additional information.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*And I was initially employed to be an entrance assistant, whose job was to keep the queue under control as well as keeping the area clean.  
I was at the concert when I met a friend of mine whose job is to organise shows like that.*

### FORM: PRONOUN + PREPOSITION

[B2] Can use defining relative clauses and non-defining relative clauses ending in a preposition, with 'who/which/that' as the complement of the preposition.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Thank you very much for having provided us with valuable information about your finance services, which we are greatly interested in.*

*I would like to do some painting, which I am quite good at.*

*They have three wonderful children who I love to play with.*

*He was involved in a case that he had nothing to do with!*

### FORM: WITH 'WHERE', PLACE

[B1] Can use defining relative clauses with 'where' to define nouns referring to place.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The city where I live is very nice and extremely charming.*

*But if they are going to a place where you go every year you should go with your friends, you will have more fun.*

*We went to the area where I used to live when I was a child near the Highlands.*

### FORM: WITH 'WHOSE NAME'

[B1] Can use defining and non-defining relative clauses with 'whose name'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*We have a new employee whose name is Mary Watts.*

*It was a very famous football player, whose name was known all over the world.*

*I have many friends but I'll tell you about my best friend, whose name is Nicos.*

*He has got a friend whose name is Robert.*

*The man whose name I can't remember, wrote a serious looking message.*

## SUBORDINATED

### FORM/USE: '-ING' CLAUSE

[B2] Can use a non-finite clause, introduced by '-ing' before a main clause, to give more information.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Having no choice, I sat down on a bench which was in the middle of the road to wait for the rain to stop.*

*Using his best smile, Paul asked her if he could sit beside her.*

*Having analysed the data I have concluded that CTP Translations would suit our company best.*

#### Comments

Note negative pattern develops at C1: 'Not knowing the North of London very well it took me quite a long time to get there.' Note also the examples of the perfect form as well, here and below.

### FORM/USE: 'NOT' + '-ING' CLAUSE

[C1] Can use a non-finite clause, introduced by 'not' + '-ing', to give more information.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not knowing the North of London very well it took me quite a long time to get there.  
A nine-member family living peacefully in 19th-century England is suddenly shocked by the untimely death of the mother. Not having accepted his wife's death, the father, George, deeply depressed, is left alone to raise his seven children.*

### FORM/USE: 'WERE' + PRONOUN + 'TO' INFINITIVE, FORMAL

[C2] Can use 'Were' + pronoun + 'to' infinitive to introduce a condition, in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Were I to choose one of them, I would select the last one, so that I could have the opportunity to take part in my favourite radio station's programme.  
Were you to need any further information, please do not hesitate to contact me.  
Were we to give them this opportunity, it would not only be a great advantage for them but for the future of our society as well.  
Were they to be paid a sufficient sum, say, equivalent or even more than their current pay-check, they would be inclined to give up their jobs.*

### Comments

Note this is instead of 'If' + pronoun + 'were to' infinitive... so it involves ellipsis and inversion.

### FORM/USE: CONDITIONS

[B2] Can use a finite subordinate clause, before or after a main clause, with conjunctions to introduce conditions. ► clauses: conditionals

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Unless something is done many people will die.  
Getting to work by car is comfortable and faster unless you are caught in a traffic jam.  
Provided the weather is fine, you could also go swimming or take a tour through our beautiful town.  
I agree with you that your house will certainly be too small and I like your suggestion to book the Majestic Hotel, provided it will not be too expensive.*

### Comments

While 'unless' is a B1 lexical item in the EVP and taught at B1, its conditional use is not established until B2. || Also note that 'unless' is very error prone at B1.

### FORM/USE: CONTRAST

[B1] Can use a finite subordinate clause with conjunctions ('even though, (al)though, while if') to introduce contrast, before or after a main clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You should come with your sister even though you would rather be alone.  
Even though I am currently quite busy, I will be very glad to take part in the Conference dinner.  
Although he was famous, I didn't like him.  
Though we are not studying at the same school now, we always keep in touch.  
The main actor is my favorite actor, although I can't remember his name.  
I think going on holiday with your parents won't be very much fun, while if you go with your friends you will enjoy yourself much more.*

### Comments

Note even though is at B2 in EVP and commonly taught for First Certificate but there are 109 instances on pass-level scripts at B1. Note that while with the meaning of contrast is low frequency overall, with the dominant meaning relating to time. As vocabulary evolves, whereas and whilst are used at B2.

### FORM/USE: INVERSION

[C1] Can introduce a subordinate clause with inverted 'should/had/were' + subject + verb, in formal contexts.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Should you need any further assistance, do not hesitate to contact me.*

*Had we known that before we could have taken more money with us.*

*Were I able to travel to any place and time, I would probably choose the Greece of more than two thousand years ago.*

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE AFTER 'ALTHOUGH', 'THOUGH'

[C2] Can use non-finite clauses after subordinating conjunctions '(although, though)', to express contrast.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was my parents' first and only child, and I was brought up at my grandparents' home, because, although married, my mother decided not to leave her parents' home, and my father agreed with her.*

*Although committed to her job she successfully maintains her social contacts all over the world.*

*Jack, though disappointed, respects the result.*

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE WITH '-ED' CLAUSES, FOCUS

[C1] Can use a non-finite subordinate clause with an '-ed' form, before a main clause, to give focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Compared to the campsite job this one has its advantages.*

*Based on the assessment above, I strongly recommend that we should take some action to improve the store.*

*Given all the inconveniences explained above I expect compensation from your company and if I do not hear from you within ten days I will have to contact my solicitors and take further steps.*

*Based in Zurich with departments all over Europe we reach almost 150 million people.*

### Comments

There are examples of this pattern at B2 but they are predominantly business. Note that 'compared to' is a chunk that can be learnt as a unit.

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE WITH '-ING'

[B1] Can use a non-finite subordinate clause with 'before' and 'after' + '-ing', before or after a main clause, to refer to time.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Instead I buy books once a month and I read them in the evening before going to bed.*

*We can relax after working hard at school.*

*Before going back home we ate a hot meal in a beautiful restaurant called "Palladium".*

*After having breakfast I started doing my homework.*

### Comments

The non-finite clauses occur much more frequently after the main clause than before it.

[B2] Can use a non-finite subordinate clause with 'after' + 'having/being' + '-ed' form, before a main clause, to refer to past time.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*After having worked for many hours, you'll probably be tired.*

*After having left you, we reached Dublin and we stayed there for four days and then we made a tour of Ireland.*

*After being given the pass you'll be able to take as many pictures you like.*

### FORM/USE: PURPOSE, RESULT

[B1] Can use a finite subordinate clause with conjunctions ('so (that), in order that') to introduce purpose and result, after a main clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think it is important to write about this topic so that young students and other people who are working with business, can get some inspiration.*

*Could you please give me some extra exercises so that I can cover the work I missed?*

*Please contact me if you need accommodation so I can book it for you.*

*If you come, please bring your camera in order that we can take some photos.*

### Comments

In order that is not very frequent.

### FORM/USE: REASON

[B1] Can use a finite subordinate clause with conjunctions to introduce reasons, after a main clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I prefer to speak on 14 July, as I have got another appointment on the next day.*

*I am going to be absent from my English class next week, as I am travelling to Italy.*

*Unfortunately I will not be able to go to your class tomorrow since I have an appointment with the doctor.*

*A budget of €10,000 is approved to replace our old copier machine, since it is not working properly.*

### FORM: NON-FINITE AFTER 'IF'

[C1] Can use non-finite clauses after 'if'. ► 'clauses: conditionals'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Please do not hesitate to ask for further assistance if needed.*

*Finally, there are some suggestions that, if taken, could improve the schools' academic standards.*

*There are plenty of taxis, of course, but they are very expensive, if compared with London taxis.*

### Comments

This is usually followed with an ellipted clause. There is a sharp increase in this structure at C1 but enough evidence to put it here.

## CONJUNCTIONS

### COORDINATING

#### FORM/USE: 'AND YET', CONCESSIVE

[C2] Can use 'And yet' to combine sentences to introduce a contrast, often unexpected, sometimes in a formal context.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If I had, I would try to do the best for them, just like my parents did, and very likely I would make the same mistakes. And yet, I think I would be a good and loving father.*

*I felt very embarrassed and I was sure I would get the sack. And yet the manager forgave me and I continued to work there.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If I had, I would try to do the best for them, just like my parents did, and very likely I would make the same mistakes. And yet, I think I would be a good and loving father.*

*And yet the manager forgave me and I continued to work there.*

#### FORM/USE: 'BOTH ... AND' WITH NOUNS

[B1] Can use 'both ... and' to combine noun phrases, to give emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I felt sorry for you because both friends and family are very important and having to pick one is very hard.*

*As a result of our aggressive and successful expansion strategy, both our market share and the number of our staff are increasing tremendously.*

*Argentina has both wonderful country landscapes and excellent towns to enjoy.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I felt sorry for you because both friends and family are very important and the decision of picking one is very hard.*

*As a result of our aggressive and successful expansion strategy, both our market share and the number of our staff are increasing tremendously.*

*Argentina has both wonderful country landscapes and excellent town places to enjoy.*

#### FORM/USE: 'BOTH ... AND' WITH PHRASES AND CLAUSES

[B2] Can use 'both ... and' to combine phrases and clauses, often for emphasis.



### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*And we have won a high reputation both at home and abroad.*

*A lot of people think that television can both entertain and educate.*

*Why not buying some extra beer and sell them on the beach? So, I could both get some enjoyment and make some money. So that was I did.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*And we have won high reputation both at home and abroad.*

*A lot of people think that television can both entertain and educate.*

*So, I could both get some enjoyment and make some money.*

### **FORM/USE: 'NEITHER ... NOR'**

[B2] Can use 'neither ... nor' to connect two words, phrases or clauses, often to give emphasis or focus.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Neither you nor I would like that.*

*We can neither eat nor drink during the lessons.*

*I have neither climbed nor surfed before, so that would be very exciting for me.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Neither you nor I would like that.*

*We can neither eat nor drink during the lessons.*

*I have neither climbed nor surfed before, so that would be very exciting for me.*

### **FORM/USE: 'NEITHER'**

[C2] Can use 'Neither' or 'Nor' + inverted auxiliary or 'be' + subject to add to a previous related negative clause, to focus on an additional negative factor.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Nevertheless, I have no recollection of ever leaving my diary. In fact, I can clearly remember that I kept it with me all the time I was working. Neither do I remember losing it during the time I was on the platform waiting for my train to pull in.*

*Maybe he will eventually get over this terrible experience, but he's bound to be a lonelier boy than he was. Nor does Jack's future look any more promising.*

*There are also considerable disturbances during day-time. It is, for example, not possible to lead a conversation, e.g. on the veranda, without shouting. Nor is it possible to watch television peacefully without the thunderous noise in the background.*

*At first, I didn't pay attention to the large number of magazines and newspapers she subscribed to. Neither did I oppose her 'need' to get new clothes every month.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Neither do I remember losing it during the time I was on the platform waiting for my train to pull in.*

*Nor does Jack's future look any more promising.*

*Nor is it possible to watch television peacefully without the thunderous noise in the background.*

*Neither did I oppose to her 'need' to get new clothes every month.*

#### **FORM/USE: 'NOT ONLY ... BUT ALSO'**

[C1] Can use 'not only ... but also' to combine phrases and clauses, often for focus or emphasis.

##### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*This book is not only a guide to the history of music but also a compendium of theory.*

*In addition to that, if we move to the new premises, we can not only solve the above problems, but also gain other benefits such as a better environment.*

*If we go back in time we will see that the difference between the old and the modern films is not only the number produced but also the content.*

##### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*This book is not only a guide of the History of Music but also a compendium of theory as it includes subjects as Harmony, Accustics or information on instruments.*

*In addition to that, if we move to the new premises, we can not only solve the above problems, but also gain other benefits such as better environment.*

*If we go back in time we will see that the difference between the old and the modern films, it not only in the number of their production but also the content.*

#### **FORM/USE: 'NOT ONLY ... BUT ALSO' WITH INVERSION**

[C1] Can use inverted auxiliary 'do' + the subject after 'not only', to give focus.

##### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Indeed, not only did they teach us useful knowledge, but they also organised practical exercises to ensure that we had assimilated all the information.*

*Furthermore, not only do I speak (and write) in fluent English, but I also speak French, Spanish and Portuguese.*

*For me, not only do extreme sports provide satisfaction of achievement, but they also help you to express yourself.*

##### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Indeed, not only did they teach us useful knowledge, but they also organised practical exercices to assure that we had assimilated all the information given.*

*Furthermore, not only do I speak (and write) influent English, but I also speak French, Spanish and Portuguese.*

*For me, not only do extreme sports provide satisfaction for your achievement, but they also help you to express yourself.*

#### **FORM/USE: 'PLUS' WITH CLAUSES**

[B1] Can use 'plus' to connect clauses and sentences, often to point out a positive addition or advantage.

##### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I would be more than pleased to receive you at home, it's not too big, but we could have a lot of fun, plus you won't have to pay a thing!*

*It's around 200 so it's pretty cheap for a good game. Plus, it's really addictive and fun!*

*It will be fun because everyone is going to be there. Plus, the park is the best place for a picnic, we can run and just have fun!*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would be more than pleased to receive you at home, it's not too big, but we could have a lot of fun, plus, you won't have to pay a thing!*

*It's around 200 so it's pretty cheap for a good game.*

*Plus, the park is the best place for a picnic, we can run and just have fun!*

### FORM/USE: 'YET', CONCESSIVE

[C1] Can use '(and) yet' to combine phrases and clauses to introduce a contrast, often unexpected.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In the face of these recent events, our department also reviewed the contract with ProLine International, and found some interesting yet unpleasant details.*

*This college is famous for its art teachers and very skilled students, and yet it does not have its own gallery.*

*The host family was carefully selected, yet it was four miles away from school.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In the face of these recent events, our department also reviewed the contract with ProLine International, and found some interesting, yet unplasant details.*

*This college is famous for it art teachers and very skilled students and yet it does not have its own gallery.*

*In spite of the fact that the host family was carefully selected yet it was four miles away from school.*

### FORM: 'EITHER ... OR'

[B1] Can use 'either ... or' to connect two words, phrases or clauses.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The men wear suits, either white or black, and the bride and women wear special long dresses, usually the same colour.*

*We can go either to the beach or to the inner part of Uruguay which is mainly a huge meadow. I'll either write or phone you soon.*

*You can either go to the gym or attend some special classes, where you do gentle exercises.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The men wear suits, either white or black, and the bride and women wear special long dresses, usally with the same collor.*

*We can go either to the beach or to the inner part of Uruguay wich is mainly a huge meadow. I'll either write or phone you soon.*

*You can either go to the gym or attend some special classes, where you get gentle exercises.*

[C1] Can use 'either ... or' to combine more complex strings of clauses and sentences.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*And finally, about the present, you have two options; either you get something typical from your country, which they may like because you know how much they like collecting things from all over the world, or I get something from the wedding list store and sent it to them with your name on it and we can sort it out when you arrive here.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*And finally, about the present, you have two options; either you get something typical from your country, which they may like because you know how much they like collecting things from all over the world, or I get something from the wedding list store and sent it to them with your name on it and we can sort it out when you arrive here.*

### FORM: 'PLUS' WITH NOUNS

[B1] Can use 'plus' as coordinating conjunction, often in relation to numbers.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In my house we are six people, my mother, my father, my sister and my two brothers, plus my two cats, which are members of the family too.*

*It cost me £2,500 plus the taxes.*

*At the moment I pay 550 pounds monthly plus bills.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In my house we are six people, My mother, My father, my sister and my two brothers, plus my two cats which are members of the family too*

*It cost me £2,500 plus the taxes.*

*At the moment I pay 550 pounds monthly plus bills.*

### FORM: COMPLEX ADDING

[B1] Can use a range of conjunctions ('and, but, or, so, then') to combine more complex strings of clauses and sentences.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was scared and closed the window, but I couldn't sleep, so a few minutes later I opened the window again, but they were gone.*

*Then we went to his limousine and we went to his studio and he was singing "Thriller" then I heard a strange voice, I woke up, and there was my mom waking me up.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I was scare and closed the window, but I couden't sleep so few minut later I opened window again, but they were gon.*

*Then we went to his limosine and we went to his studio and he was singing "Thriller" then I heard a strange voice, I woke up, and there was my mom waking me up.*

## SUBORDINATING

### FORM/USE: 'IN THAT'

[C2] Can use 'in that' as a subordinating conjunction, to give greater in-depth explanation, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Nowadays it is widely argued that professional sports are damaging to people's health in that they involve gruelling training sessions as an integral part of the occupation.*

*It's often said that nowadays people must be proud of medical advances, in that life is getting considerably longer.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Nowadays it is widely argued that professional sports are damaging to people's health in that they involve gruelling training sessions as an integral part of the occupation.*

*With regards, Yours sincerely </original\_answer> <original\_answer> It's often said that nowadays people must be proud of medical advances, in that life is getting considerably longer.*

### **FORM/USE: FOCUS**

[C1] Can use 'whatever', 'wherever', 'however', etc. as a subordinating conjunction, at the beginning of a sentence, to give focus.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Whatever you choose, you'll probably have to share it with other people.*

*Whatever the cause of the fall in the standard of your services is, we would strongly recommend that you take all the necessary measures to make sure that this won't happen again.*

*Wherever you go, you find shops, hotels and pubs which are full of tourists.*

*Whoever we appoint, he/she should be a well-qualified, educated and flexible person.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Whatever you choose, you'll probably have to share it with other people.*

*Whatever the cause of the fall in the standard of your services is, we would strongly recommend that you take all the necessary measures to make sure that this won't happen again.*

*Wherever you go, you find shops, hotels and pubs, which are full of tourists.*

*Whoever we appoint, he/she should be a well qualified, educated and flexible person.*

### **FORM: COMPLEX**

[B2] Can use more complex subordinating conjunctions ('as long as, as soon as, in order that, despite the fact that, due to the fact that, as if, as though') to introduce a subordinate clause.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*As far as I am concerned, keeping animals in zoos is not cruel as long as the zoos keep to certain rules concerning the conditions the animals have to be kept in.*

*I decided to go to Paris as soon as I finished university.*

*The jazz, rock and classical concerts were really entertaining except that there were some concert halls which were too small for the audience.*

*So take a rest in your hotel, in order that you can be prepared for your packed schedule.*

*To sum up, the festival was successful, so I hope most people enjoyed the festival despite the fact that there were some problems with the poor sound system, and so on.*

*Due to the fact that the mass of cars pollute the cities and the environment, we are forced to give up our city habits and learn to be more sensible by using public transportation.*

*From the window of my room I could see her every night, as if she was the great mother of the sky.*

*Everything was so familiar, so close, as though he had never left the place.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As far as I am concerned keeping animals in zoos is not cruel as long as the zoos keep to certain rules concerning the conditions the animals have to keep up with.*

*Thank you for your time, and We're looking forward to hearing from your opinion. faithfully yours </original\_answer> <original\_answer> IT WAS DANGEROUS, BUT I KNEW I HAD TO DO IT ...BECAUSE Since always I'd gotten the idea of travel abroad and experience others people's life and cultures, so I decided to go to Paris as soon as I finished university.*

*The jazz, rock and classical concerts were really entertaining except that there were some concert halls too small for the audience: I'm sure that you can find bigger halls for next year. So take a rest in your hotel, in order that you can be prepared for your full scheduled days.*

*To sum up, the festival was successful, so I hope most people enjoyed the festival despite the fact that there were some problems with the poor sound system, and so on.*

*Due to the fact that the mass of cars pollute the cities and the environment, we are forced to give up our city habits and learn to be more reasonable by using public transportation.*

*From the window of my room I could see her every night, as if she was the great mother of the sky. (588860\_1; FCE; Portugal; B2 VANTAGE; 1993; Portuguese; Pass) Everything was so familiar, so close, as though he never left the place.*

### FORM: SIMPLE

[B1] Can use an increasing range of simple subordinating conjunctions ('as, after, before since, until, although, whether, so (that), though') to introduce a subordinate clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In fact, I have to buy a desk, as I don't have one.*

*I usually read during the afternoon after I have finished my homework.*

*Before going out in the centre, we went to a pub in order to eat something together, but I didn't see my boyfriend because he stayed at home.*

*I haven't seen him since we were at school.*

*I'm really sorry that I'm not available to attend this since I'll be in China for an important meeting with a customer.*

*But I didn't remember my ring until I got back home.*

*Although the holiday was fantastic, I wished that you were with us.*

*My parents also want me to go on holiday with them this summer, although I want to stay with my friends.*

*There were lots of people waiting for us though we had never met them before.*

*You gave it to me so that I could fix it!*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*In fact, I have to buy a desk, as I don't have one.*

*I usually read during the afternoon after I have finished my homework.*

*Before going out, in centre, we went to a pub in order to eat something together, but I didn't see my boyfriend because he was staying at home.*

*I haven't seen him since we were at school.*

*I'm really sorry that I'm not available to attend this since I'll be in China for an important meeting with a customer.*

*But I didn't remember my ring until I came back at home.*

*There was also onther peopl from many cantries visiting this place. becuas it is famus for holidays spicialy cycling ones Although the holiday was fantastice, I wishid that you were with us.*

*My parents also want me to go on holiday with them this summer, although I want to stay with my friends, but I go with them, because it will be the last time I'm able to.*

*There were a lots of people waiting for us though we had never seen them before.*

*You gave it to me so that I could fix it!*

[B2] Can use a wide range of simple subordinating conjunctions ('once, whereas, unless, except (that) provided (that)'), to introduce a subordinate clause.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Believe me, once you have tried it, you'll never give it up.*

*Once you become an employee, you'll get discounts on books and CDs.*

*Some of us find it very useful whereas others still have difficulty in accepting technology as a valuable thing for everyone.*

*Getting to work by car is comfortable, and faster unless you are caught in a traffic jam.*

*Unless the situation improves, we will be forced to try a new supplier.*

*Whenever I walk down the street, I always want to go into every shop.*

*I can't say that I've changed much, except that now I'm blond!*

*It offers special services for students provided you show your student card.*

*Also, provided that some customers are always in the shops, the electricity is not really "wasted".*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Believe me, once you have tried it, you'll never leave it.*

*Once you become an employee you'll get discounts on books and Cds.*

*Some of us find it very useful, whereas others still have difficulty in accepting technology as a valuable thing for everyone.*

*Getting to work by bicycle is good solution but only in case of good weather and getting to work by car is comfortable and faster unless you are caught in a traffic jam.*

*Unless the situation improves we will be forced to try a new supplier.*

*I can't say that I changed much, except that now I'm blond!*

*It offers special services for student, such as a welcome drink and a cheap price for the room provided you show your student card.*

*Also, provided that some customers are always in the shops, the electricity is not so much "wasted".*

# DETERMINERS

## ARTICLES

### FORM/USE: 'THE MORE ... THE MORE ...'

[B2] Can use the in comparative phrases 'more', 'less', 'worse', 'better ... the more', 'less', 'worse ...' to talk about one thing that is affected by another. ► comparative clauses

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about how watching TV is bad for you] I mean that you can watch one or two hours a day but the more you watch, the worse you become.*

*The better education you have, the better opportunities you can get.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I mean that you can see one or two hours a day but the more you see the worse you become.*

*The better education you have the better oportunity you can get.*

### FORM/USE: 'THE OTHER'

[B1] Can use 'the other' with a singular noun to refer to the second or the opposite of two things, and with a plural noun to refer to one of a set of things. ► pronouns ► noun phrases

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*She saw his blue jacket in a shop on the other side of the street.*

*I moved to this house because the other house was very small, and my brother and I have to share a bedroom.*

*We need a new distribution company, because the other companies are very expensive.*

*In the first lesson we did some games in English, so I met all the other people in the class.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Just before she wanted to return to the café she saw his blue jacket in a shop on the other side of the street.*

*I move to this house because the other house was very small, and my brother and my have to shear a bedroom.*

*He lives at the other end of the city.*

*We need a new distribution company, because the other companies are very expensive.*

*At the first lesson we did some games in English, so I met all the other people in the class.*

*I think that's a good election, because black is a colour that can be use with all the other colors, like red, white, etc.*

### FORM/USE: NO ARTICLE

[B1] Can use no article before an increasing range of singular and plural nouns when referring to things in general.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Education in the future will change in a good way.*

*But remember this: friends are important, but they are not for life. Your family will always be there to support you.*

*Yes, sometimes I like shopping for clothes.*



### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Education in the future will change in a good way.*

*Yes, sometimes I like shopping for clothes.*

### FORM: 'ANOTHER' |

[B1] Can use 'another' with singular nouns. ► pronouns ► determiners

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Every 5 minutes, he makes another great joke.*

*Maria cried, but after a few minutes, she dried her tears and said: "Tomorrow will be another day!"*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Every 5 minutes, he makes another great joke.*

*"... Maria cried, but after a few minutes, she dried his tears and said: "Tomorrow will be another day!"*

### FORM: PREPOSITION + NO ARTICLE

[B1] Can use no article before an increasing range of nouns in some fixed expressions with prepositions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The weather is very cold at night.*

*This programme will be shown on television next Friday.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I feel very cool at here, but the weather is very cold at night.*

*This programme will be shown on television next Friday.*

### USE: DIFFERENT (WITH 'ANOTHER')

[B1] Can use 'another' to talk about something different.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm sorry but I won't be able to go to the English class tomorrow because I'll go to Maldonado to see my mother that is ill. But I can go another day to cover the work I've missed.*

*Personally I think that it is better to stay at another hotel such as a Holiday Inn.*

### USE: ONE MORE (WITH 'ANOTHER')

[B1] Can use 'another' to talk about something additional.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Dear Mary, I spent a week in Dubai and I am going to spend another week in Al Ain.*

*In 'Master' they've got excellent pasta, which is another reason why I love the restaurant.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Dear Mary, I spent a week in Dubai and I am going to spend another week in Al Ain.*

*I like it because the food is great, and it is beautiful inside. My favourite food is pasta. In 'Master' they've got excellent pasta, which is another reason why I love the restaurant.*

## DEMONSTRATIVES

### FORM/USE: 'THIS' WITH NOUN AND POSSESSIVE

[C2] Can use 'this' + noun + 'of' + possessive pronoun to highlight something, often in a positive way.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*What is more, not only is this rare talent of theirs used for public pleasure but also for international sports success, which makes us all proud.*

*This characteristic of his is shown in every situation of his life.*

### USE: 'THIS', IN NARRATIVES

[C2] Can use 'this' with nouns and noun phrases in a narrative to create a sense of immediacy.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about two characters in a story] There's this flame of passion between them.*

*It's a story where there's this old man who makes a marionette that comes to life.*

*In our group there was this girl, tiny and fragile, very sensitive; she had a special way with words.*

### USE: 'THIS', PAST

[B1] Can use 'this' with time and date words to refer to the past.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Hi Mark, Thank you for your lovely letter which I received this morning.*

*It was the best decision I've ever made. It happened this summer.*

### USE: EMOTIONAL DISTANCE

[C2] Can use 'that' and 'those' to convey emotional distance, often to express disapproval.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I also told her that if I had been in her shoes, I would not have put up with that sort of behaviour.*

*Nowadays, celebrities, like pop stars or football players, are often worshipped by hysterical crowds of fans who can't see through the mask that those so-called heroes make up to sell the product that they are.*

## POSSESSIVES

### FORM: 'S + 'S'

[C2] Can use two possessive 's' constructions in the same noun phrase.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*There were no photographs of him in Ann 's mother's albums.*

*They spent two weeks together at Emily's grandmother's house, after fourteen months of dating.*

### FORM: 'S' WITH ELLIPTED NOUN

[C2] Can use 's' without a following noun when the noun has already been mentioned or is obvious in the context.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Olivia's experiences probably are the narrator's.*

*He started to shake me and meanwhile I heard a familiar voice; it was my father's.*

*Suddenly, after two weeks I realised that my bank account was empty and so was my friend's.*

### FORM: 'ITS'

[B2] Can use possessive determiner 'its' before nouns to refer to a singular inanimate subject or object.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was the biggest TV in the bazaar with its huge, black screen.*

*The journey was quite long but Verona is a great city, with its buildings and churches.*

*They've chosen my school because of its size.*

### Comments

Lots of error using 'his' instead of 'its' up until B2.

### FORM: 'ONE'S'

[C1] Can use 'one's' to indicate possession, referring to people in general.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Living in Greece, I have had a chance to realise how much tourism can affect one's life.*

*After one has spent enough time away from one 's parents and has a personality of one's own, it is definitely possible to move in with one's parents.*

*In my opinion, this process depends on one's ability to open another way of communicating apart from one's mother language.*

### FORM: 'THEIR'

[B1] Can use possessive determiner 'their'. ► noun phrases ► possessive pronouns

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They were having the time of their lives, watching all the animals the zoo had, but when they returned to their car, they saw that someone was stealing Paul's suitcase.*

*They filmed the artists and their work.*

*I couldn't see their faces.*

### Comments

These possessives are very L1 influenced. For example there is only 3% error with 'their' at B1 but almost 50% of those are Romance languages.

### FORM: IRREGULAR PLURAL NOUN + 'S'

[B1] Can use 's' after irregular plural nouns to indicate possession.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When I go out with my friends, I actually like wearing clothes that attract people's attention.*

*The second reason is: it is too far from the children's school and, unfortunately, I haven't got a car.*

### FORM: OF + NOUN PHRASE 'S'

[B2] Can use 's' after a noun phrase with of to indicate possession.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Actually, I know a great one and they can make a little discount for us because the owner is a friend of my father's.*

### Comments

This feature is very low frequency in the CLC.

### FORM: PLURAL NOUN + 'S'

[B2] Can use 's' after plural nouns to indicate possession.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I decided to spend the rest of my holiday in my parents' house, near the sea.*

*So, if you want to study animals' behaviour, try to do it without changing the real circumstances in which they act!*

### FORM: SINGULAR NOUN ENDING IN 'S' + APOSTROPHE

[C2] Can use an apostrophe after singular nouns ending in 's', to indicate possession.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*However, I believe that in order to maintain its popularity, the programme should keep some of the series' aspects the same, but alter some others.*

### Comments

This feature is very low frequency in CLC and CEC.

### USE: GENERIC 'THEIR'

[B2] Can use 'their' before nouns to refer to a generic body or group of people expressed as a singular subject. ► generic pronouns

### Corrected Learner Examples

*... yet everyone has their preference for one or another.*

*Everyone has their own opinion.*

*IBM is a very important customer for us and they ordered 10,000 colour copies which show their new product.*

## QUANTITY

### FORM/USE: 'MANY A' WITH SINGULAR NOUNS, FOR FOCUS

[C2] Can use 'many a' or 'many an' + singular noun for emphasis and focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We have come a long way and climbed many a mountain but are we really better off than our ancestors?*

*Her father's pharmacy was broken into very often, the local drug addicts were relentless and Mary was threatened many a time on her way home from work.*

*It has raised many an issue which I would like to comment upon here.*

### FORM/USE: WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

[B1] Can use quantifying determiners with uncountable nouns, often in informal and/or spoken contexts ('a little', 'a bit of' and 'a little bit of').

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I went with my friends so we could spend a little time together.*

*I had a bit of free time, so I took the bus and I went to my friend's house.*

*I just watch a little bit of TV when I come home from school.*

### Comments

Note that these determiners can be used with uncountable nouns only.

### FORM: 'EITHER', 'NEITHER' + 'OF' + DETERMINER WITH PLURAL NOUNS

[C1] Can use 'either' and 'neither' + 'of' with plural noun phrases or pronouns. ► pronouns

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Either of the measures is recommended and those measures are bound to enhance the company's competitive power.*

*Of course if you are not at all interested in sports, neither of these games will be of any interest to you.*

*However, you forgot to add that neither of us could foresee the rise in the price of wheat.*

### FORM: 'EITHER', 'NEITHER' WITH SINGULAR NOUNS

[C1] Can use 'either' and 'neither' with singular nouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Second, we would draw your attention to the fact that neither party could foresee or predict the recent rise in the price of wheat.*

*In the Czech Republic, somewhere between those two extremes, either way is possible.*

*This way, the toilet can be accessed easily from either floor.*

### Comments

Note that these determiners can be used with singular nouns only.

### FORM: 'LITTLE/FEW'

[B2] Can use modifier + 'little' + uncountable nouns and modifier + 'few' + countable nouns, to indicate a lack of something or not as much as expected of something. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I spend very little time outside, and I know I do not have enough stamina and strength.*

*We are sick of working hard for so little money.*

*There are so few animals living on the earth today and the pandas have so few places left to live and to eat, so we must try helping these animals.*

### FORM: 'MANY' WITH PLURAL NOUNS, INTERROGATIVE

[B1] Can use 'many' with plural nouns in interrogative contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Have you got many friends in England?*

*[talking about TV] How many channels are there in Britain?*

### Comments

There is very little evidence of interrogative use because of the lack of spoken data. It may be that in spoken data we see this at lower levels.

**FORM: 'MUCH' WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS, INTERROGATIVE**

[B1] Can use 'much' with uncountable nouns in interrogative contexts.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*How much television do you watch?*

*Do you watch much TV?*

**Comments**

There is very little evidence of interrogative use because of the lack of spoken data. It may be that in spoken data we see this at lower levels.

**FORM: 'SO MUCH', 'TOO MUCH' WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS**

[B1] Can use 'so much' and 'too much' with uncountable nouns.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Hello Marina. Unfortunately I have so much work at the moment that I can't help you.*

*My neighbours are making too much noise.*

**Comments**

Although there is evidence at A2 with so much fun there is not enough evidence of generalised use with other nouns. e.g. 'I had so much fun'. (2668084\_1; KETfS; Vietnam; A2 WAYSTAGE; 2009; Vietnamese; Pass) |

**FORM: DETERMINER + 'OF' + DETERMINER**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of quantifying determiners + 'of' + determiner ('half of', 'enough of', 'none of',).► pronouns

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*In my opinion you should spend half of your holiday with your parents and the other half with your friends: I think this would be the best thing to do.*

*Anyway that's enough of my news!*

*Although I knew which kind of dress I wanted, none of the stores had it.*

**FORM: MODIFYING**

[B1] Can modify determiners with adverbs. ► adverbs

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Because almost all of the programmes are stupid.*

*His name is Richard and since we were just little kids, we've spent nearly every day together.*

**FORM: WITH PLURAL AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of quantifying determiners with both plural nouns and uncountable nouns ('most', 'enough', 'plenty of', 'loads of').

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I'm convinced that most people watch too much TV these days.*

*If you haven't got enough credit on your phone, we can meet at 11 am at the bookshop.*

*I think if we meet at 8 pm, we'll have plenty of time to buy the tickets and some drinks.*

*We went to loads of beautiful places.*

### FORM: WITH PLURAL NOUNS

[B1] Can use a wide range of quantifying determiners with plural nouns ('several', 'millions of', 'a few of').

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*So several days ago we received a complaint.*

*I took it and wished to have millions of dollars.*

*They interviewed a few of the students, the teachers and the headmistress.*

#### Comments

Note that these determiners can be used with plural nouns only.

### USE: HYPERBOLE

[C1] Can use determiners in hyperbole, often in informal contexts ('millions of', 'loads of', 'tons of').

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*My kitchen is absolutely cramped. I love cooking and despite the fact that I have no space, I managed to fit in a table as well as millions of cookbooks and all the necessary kitchen tools.*

*I'm going to make loads of cookies this year and will give them in nice little boxes to my family and friends.*

*I received tons of plastic ducks every time I had my birthday or some kind of celebration.*

## DISCOURSE MARKERS

### DISCOURSE MARKERS IN WRITING

#### FORM/USE: ADVERBS, STANCE

[B1] Can use adverbs as discourse markers to indicate an attitude or viewpoint.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Unfortunately, they filmed only the building and the garden, not the students!*

*Actually, I do not have much time to watch television.*

*Surprisingly, the suitcase was Lucy's.*

#### Comments

There is evidence of this use at A2 but more convincing at B1.

#### FORM/USE: COMPARING

[B2] Can use a range of phrases as discourse markers to introduce a comparison.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about celebrating New Year] But some countries celebrate on other dates too, like they have Chinese New Year according to their calendar. Likewise, in Nepal New Year is celebrated on 1st of Baishak, which is the start of a new year according to the Nepalese calendar.*

*This group is expected to decrease considerably in the next fifty years. Similarly, the population of children are likely to drop to 11.5% in 2050.*

*When you read a letter from someone, you can imagine and almost feel the emotions of that someone. In the same way, when you read a book, you can feel the author's sensations, travel to distant places or participate in adventures only possible in your imagination.*

### FORM/USE: ORGANISING, ADDING

[B1] Can use a range of words and phrases as discourse markers to add information.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Moreover the health of our staff and customers is essential.*

*In addition it is wonderful to see the prize that the winner gets at the end, sometimes it is money or a nice holiday.*

*Besides, you're 18 years old and you aren't a baby.*

*What is more, you could go to "Estadio Centerano" to watch football matches and to Maroias to go horseriding.*

*Furthermore, I think that you should do some small exercises during your break, for example you could go running in the morning and evening.*

### Comments

Note that there are 54 instances of items such as 'moreover', 'in addition' and 'besides' at A2; they are mostly from Romance languages, especially French learners. At B1, the frequency is 1,500 and across a wider L1 range.

### FORM/USE: ORGANISING, CONTRASTING

[B1] Can use a range of phrases as discourse markers to introduce contrasting statements.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*On the one hand going to a large school is better for making friends, but on the other hand I think you can learn better in a small school.*

*My new teacher, on the contrary, understands us and I think she is skilful, because during the first lesson she organised a game.*

### Comments

There is evidence of use of other contrasting phrases: 'in contrast' at B2 and 'conversely' at C2.

### FORM/USE: ORGANISING, MARKING NEW KNOWLEDGE, INFORMAL

[B1] Can use 'you see', 'the thing is' as discourse markers to mark new knowledge, usually in informal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You see, in the park, you can enjoy fresh air?*

*The thing is, if I could move I'd go to the countryside.*

### FORM/USE: ORGANISING, OPENINGS AND CLOSINGS, FORMAL

[B2] Can use a range of phrases as discourse markers to open and close texts and point to conclusions, often in formal contexts.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*To begin with, I want to ensure that you are going to have a great time with us.*

*For a start, we have lived with books for thousands of years while television is only half a century old.*

*In conclusion, if people in zoos look after the animals, it isn't cruel to keep an animal in zoo.*

*To sum up, I think that whether you use a car or a bicycle depends on several aspects: where you live, when you work, the weather, and also the kind of job you do.*

*In summary I would like to say that the majority of students is willing to help with cleaning, collecting the rubbish or even giving up their cars.*

### FORM/USE: SEQUENCING

[B1] Can use sequencing adverbs as discourse markers to organise text.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Firstly, we need a good expert to run the course. Secondly, good materials are needed.*

*? Secondly, I know you like a healthy life so if you don't eat too much candy and unhealthy food, you can keep fit easily. And lastly, please believe in yourself, I know you can do it, and don't give up the exercise?*

*Finally, I would be grateful if you would arrange a car from this airport.*

*First of all, I must tell you that it always depends on how badly you want to do something.*

### FORM/USE: SUMMARISING, FORMAL

[B2] Can use a range of phrases as discourse markers to summarise.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Thus, I would be very grateful if you would send me clear explanations of the following points: firstly, I would like you to specify what ?the normal price? is, and therefore what would be the cost of two nights.*

*Consequently, visiting zoos can help people learn about nature.*

*Hence, there is a great need to improve the situation of those animals so that their life would not become life imprisonment.*

*Therefore, we are likely to enter the market as a pioneer, which will have a lot of benefits.*

### Comments

Even though 'in sum' and 'To sum up' have a summarising function they are very much markers of closings. 'Thus', 'Hence', etc. have more of a clausal summarising function.

### FORM/USE: TEXTUAL REFERENCE

[C1] Can use a range of phrases as discourse markers to point to other parts of a text.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As mentioned above, it might be possible to negotiate better contracts for your company.*

*I hope this brief note has convinced you to start this club. As mentioned earlier, I have already asked for information.*

*So as shown above, I recommend TELECARS to be our car services supplier because it offers all we need.*

### Comments

As mentioned above/below etc. occurs only 5 times at B1, 35 times at B2 but mostly German speakers. There are no examples of As previously mentioned at C1 and only 1 at C2.

# FOCUS

## FOCUS

### FORM/USE: 'IT' + 'BE' ADJECTIVE + 'THAT' CLAUSE

[B1] Can use 'it' + 'be' + adjective + 'that'-clause for focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's great that you have got a new job!*

*It's true that there are one or two programmes that are interesting or funny, but the rest... they're horrible!*

*It's important that you are happy.*

*It is really sad that you have to move to a different area.*

### FORM/USE: 'IT' CLEFT

[C2] Can use 'It' + 'be' + noun + 'that' clause for focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is Lily who decides to go to the seaside and it is also her who kills the turkey given by a lorry-driver.*

*It was Paul who stole the money.*

*It is Piggy who finds the conch and knows how to blow it.*

*It is my mother who always plays the role of mediator.*

*It is this silence that gives me the impression of togetherness, for which no words are needed.*

### FORM/USE: 'NOT A' + NOUN

[C2] Can use 'Not a' + noun with a passive verb or inverted auxiliary and subject for focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not a word was spoken by anyone throughout the journey.*

*Not a scrap of remorse do they have.*

### FORM/USE: 'THE REASON (THAT)', 'THE PLACE (WHICH)' + CLAUSE, SUBJECT

[B2] Can use 'The reason (that)', 'The place (which)' + clause as subject + 'be' for focus. ►  
Relative clauses

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The reason I am writing is to suggest a few things about our holidays.*

*The reason that I never continued taking lessons is that my school-work became too heavy and the costs of lessons were too expensive for me as a student.*

*The place you need is called "Academiuta".*

*The place we appreciated the most was the Cap Frehel, where nature is still wild and the birds feel at home.*

*The place which has impressed me most of all in my life is Abastumani. (Georgia (Republic of); B2 VANTAGE; 1997; Russian; Pass).*

#### Comments

The thing/person is structure is covered in the relative clauses profile at B1 level, (e.g. The person who sat next to me was her). By B2, a wider range of forms are used as subject.

**FORM/USE: 'THE THING/ FACT/ POINT/ PROBLEM IS (THAT)'**

[B2] Can use 'The thing, fact, point, problem, or reason + is (that)' for focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The reason is I like children, I have experience of looking after disabled people and I like to do things like volunteering.*

*The problem is I know myself, I am always late when I have to leave my house so I need a car to go faster.*

*The fact is that not all animals are able to deal with this.*

*The fact is science needs computers to increase knowledge and businesses need them like the air we breathe.*

*It is true that a lot of accidents are caused by cars. The point is that the car itself does not cause the accident.*

*The thing is, Alison is an eleven-year-old girl who has been, together with her father, left behind by her mother when she was just three.*

**FORM/USE: 'THE' + PREMODIFIER + 'THING, FACT ETC.' + 'IS (THAT)'**

[C2] Can use 'The' + premodifier + 'thing, fact, point, problem or reason' + 'is (that)' for focus.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The sad thing about it was that it was actually Richard who said, "Why don't you go on holiday??"*

*The strange thing was that the noise reminded her of someone making a cup of tea.*

*The sad fact is, poverty is very likely to pass down to the next generation in these situations.*

*The relevant point is that that personal, almost intimate relationship between the possessor and the thing possessed is at the core of that particular love we all hold for certain things.*

*The only problem is that they are a little too noisy in the night.*

**FORM/USE: 'WH-'CLEFT CLAUSE**

[C2] Can use 'How', 'Why', or 'Where' cleft clauses as subject, for focus

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*How we are brought up forms our character, our thinking and our attitude towards ourselves and towards everybody and everything around us.*

*Where he had gone to was a mystery.*

*How they influenced my life is hard to tell.*

*Why I think my father is successful is because of his personality, he is very fair about everything,; for example if he sees two beautiful women walking down the street and you ask him which is the nicest of them, he couldn't tell even if one was plain ugly he couldn't.*

*[talking about possessions] How people have got their objects is also important.*

**FORM/USE: 'WH-'CLEFT CLAUSE, TITLES**

[C1] Can use 'Wh-'cleft clauses as titles or subtitles, to point to something that follows, for focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Why I think this is a good idea*

*People are sensitive, and when they hear about charities, they always want to help.*

*Why you should choose that event*

*If you fund this event, you will gain in two ways: firstly you will help needy people, and secondly you will be admired.*

*The aim of this is to find out why our biggest customer stopped purchasing from our company.*

*How I investigated. First I started looking on the internet in general.*

*How we could benefit in terms of sales*

*This drink will be taken by athletes of any kind.*

### FORM/USE: 'WHAT' CLEFT CLAUSE

[C1] Can use 'What' + noun or pronoun + verb phrase as subject + 'be', for focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What we need is a strong publicity campaign, directed at young people.*

*What everyone loved were the special effects and we were very impressed by the use of advanced technological innovations.*

*What companies care about is money and football players help them to earn it.*

*What tourists want is to see the most typical things in England, not a hamburger restaurant or a London musical from the back row in the gallery.*

*What students learn are mostly facts and theories.*

*What I found particularly fascinating about this story is that it is still exciting and thrilling, despite the plot being rather easy to follow.*

### FORM/USE: FIXED EXPRESSIONS, FRONTING

[C1] Can use fixed expressions in the front position for focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*At the end of the day everything is up to you!*

*All in all, the activity week was a nice experience for both students and teachers.*

*All things considered, I would recommend the third proposal as it seems to me that it covers most of the points the students have been complaining about.*

*When it comes down to it, who does not like such a surprise?*

*When you think about it, can we afford a flat in Central London and still have something left with a basic salary?*

### Comments

Note prepositional phrases are used in a literal sense from A2 (e.g. 'In my house', 'there will be a party'). By C1, there is widespread use of fixed expressions, many of which are prepositional phrases, being used non-literally for focus.

### FORM/USE: FRONTING, ADVERBS

[B1] Can use adverbs in the front position for focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*That's my diary, the dearest thing I had. Here I wrote how I felt, what I did, who I met and all my problems.*

*Quickly I opened the envelope, took out a white piece of paper and started to read.*

*Suddenly, the door opened.*

*Outside, it wasn't a sunny day any longer, it was raining a lot.*

### FORM/USE: IMPERATIVES

[C1] Can use imperatives as pointing devices within texts for focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Note the disadvantages of this transfer.*

*Notice the difference in the salary.*

*See the written instructions on the phone for complete instruction.*

### FORM/USE: MULTIPLE FIXED EXPRESSIONS

[C2] Can use more than one fixed expression in the front position for added focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But all of a sudden, out of nowhere a bunch of people came running towards him, yelling something he couldn't understand.*

*All in all, taking everything into account, I would suggest that a leisure centre would be the most beneficial as it provides all the facilities necessary to attract and benefit a number of people in the community.*

*What is more, from my point of view happiness has nothing to do with big things but with small things such as day-to-day details.*

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE WITH '-ED' CLAUSES

[C1] Can use a non-finite subordinate clause with an '-ed' form, before a main clause, for focus, often in formal, academic or business contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Compared to other European capitals, there has been a lot done to make riding a bike less dangerous and more comfortable in Berlin.*

*Outlined below are some essential reasons which justify my choice and should be seriously considered.*

## FUTURE

### FUTURE CONTINUOUS

#### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form with 'will' and 'shall'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*However, I shall be attending class the day after tomorrow and I shall cover the work I miss by copying it from John.*

*We will be waiting for you at the River's Café at 6.30.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*However, I shall be attending class the day after tomorrow and I shall cover the work I miss by copying it from John.*

*We will be waiting for you at the River's Café at 6:30.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE WITH 'WILL'

[B1] Can use the negative form with 'will' ('won't').

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would like you to know that I won't be attending your English class next week.*

*I won't be coming because my family and I are going on a tour of London.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would like you to know that I won't be attending your English class next week.*

*I won't be coming because my family and I are going on a tour of London.*

### Comments

There are no results in the CLC of the negative form of 'shall'.

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B2] Can use 'yes/no' and 'wh-' question forms with 'will'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Will they be holding any activities at night?*

*Will I be needing any money?*

*What will you be doing in a few years if now you don't even try to do anything?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Will they be holding any activities at night?*

*Will I be needing any money.*

*What will you be doing in few years if now you don't even try to do anything.*

### Comments

There is no evidence at any level to show use as politeness strategy due to the lack of spoken data.

### USE: EXPECTATIONS WITH 'MIGHT' OR 'MAY'

[C1] Can use the future continuous with 'might' or 'may' to talk about an event or activity potentially in progress at a specified or understood time in the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As far as I'm concerned, we should definitely do some additional publicity, particularly for the new offerings which might be coming up.*

*For example, your boss may be calling at 10 pm asking you to prepare a report for next day's meeting.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As far as I'm concerned, we should definitely do some additional publicity, particularly for the new offerings which might be coming up.*

*For example, your boss may be calling at 10 pm asking you to prepare a report for next day's meeting.*

## USE: POLITENESS

[B2] Can use the future continuous with 'will' as a polite question form, in place of the present simple or future simple.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Will I be needing any money?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Will I be needing any money.*

### Comments

Use of this structure as a politeness strategy is very low frequency in CLC. It shows use of the structure as a pragmatic device. Examples in the CIC include 'How long will you be staying?' 'Will you be needing anything else?'

## FUTURE EXPRESSIONS WITH BE

### FORM: 'BE ABOUT TO'

[B2] Can use the present forms of 'be' + 'about to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You are not going to believe what I am about to tell you!*

*I'm in a hurry, my class is about to begin.*

*They are to offer the spectators a view of the variety and the beauty of the world we are surrounded by and which we are about to destroy.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You are not going to believe what I am about to tell you!*

*I'm in a hurry, my class is about to begin.*

*They are to offer the spectators a view of the variety and the beauty of the world we are surrounded by and which we are about to destroy.*

### Comments

No results for negative form.

### FORM: 'BE DUE TO'

[B2] Can use the present form of 'be' + 'due to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am afraid that July is the only appropriate month, because I am due to start work in August.*

*As some of the members of our team are due to be present at a sales promotion programme next Friday, the marketing meeting once scheduled for next Friday is postponed to next Saturday.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I am afraid that July is the only appropriate month, because I am due to start work in August.*

*As some of the members of our team are due to be present at a sales promotion programme next Friday, the marketing meeting once scheduled for next Friday is postponed to next Saturday.*

### Comments

No results for negative form. Although B2 seems like a very high level for this feature, there is not enough evidence in the corpus to put it any lower.

### FORM: 'BE TO'

[B2] Can use the present form of 'be' + 'to'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Dear Erica, I am sorry that I cannot attend the meeting at head office as expected, as I am to go on a business trip to New York then.*

*He is to come to Athens next Friday.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Dear Erica, I am sorry that I can not attend the meeting at head office as expected, as I am to go on a business trip to New York then.*

*He is to come to Athens next Friday.*

### USE: IMMEDIATE FUTURE WITH 'BE ABOUT TO'

[B2] Can use 'be about to' to talk about the immediate future, often with 'just'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I know what you 're about to answer, and moreover you might be right;*

*We're about to introduce a new identity card system in our company.*

*My company has a high reputation for manufacturing healthy foods and we are just about to launch a newly-developed healthy snack for children which requires financial backing urgently.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I know what you're about to answer, and moreover you might be right; but I'm sure that you don't choose the right option when you work fourteen hours a day.*

*We're about to introduce a new identity card system in our company.*

*My company has a high reputation for manufactorying healthy foods and we are just about to launch a newly-developed healthy snack for children which requires financial backing urgently.*

### Comments

Although there is evidence of this feature at B1, most of those are Business English or occur only in data from Spanish learners.

### USE: OBLIGATIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS WITH 'BE TO'

[B2] Can use 'be to' talk about future obligations and to give instructions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about gorillas] We have no right to do so, because they are to be respected as much as any other living form on this planet!*

*They are to have their passports with them.*

*You're to sit in front of the TV and just watch the film.*



### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We have no right of doing so, because they are to be respected as much as any other living form on this planet!*

*They are to have their passports with them.*

### Comments

No examples with 'be to' for formal events and occasions, e.g. 'The President is to open the new library.'

### USE: SCHEDULES

[B2] Can use 'be due to' and, more formally, 'be to' talk about things that are scheduled or expected.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Our annual conference for HR managers is due to take place on 10 December 2010.*

*However, the demand for products is still estimated as 'normal' and is due to increase within the next 6 months.*

*I am sorry but we are to leave a bit earlier – at about 16.00.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Our annual conference for HR managers is due to take place at 10 December 2010.*

*However, the demand for products is still estimated as „normal" and is due to increase within the next 6 months.*

*I am sorry but we are to leave a bit earlier – at about 16:00.*

## FUTURE IN THE PAST

### USE: 'BE ABOUT TO'

[B2] Can use the simple past form of 'be' + 'about to' (often with 'just') to talk about the immediate future from a point in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Two days before, I told him that our father was about to buy a brand new car.*

*When I was about to answer the question, I realised that it was not as easy as I had thought.*

*Dear Helen, Believe it or not, I was just about to write you a letter when I received yours.*

*Just as we were about to climb through the broken window, a policeman arrived on the scene.*

### USE: 'BE DUE TO'

[C2] Can use the simple past form of 'be' + 'due to' to talk about scheduled events in the future from a point in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was quite early in the morning, only 7.15 am, and my plane was due to leave in about 40 minutes.*

*Ten minutes after the time we were due to begin, she arrived.*

*We have succeeded in persuading the local Council that the factory that was due to be built near the lake was dangerous.*

### USE: 'BE GOING TO'

[B1] Can use the simple past form of 'be' + 'going to' to talk about the future from a point in the past. ► 'be going to'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She was going to return it but she saw something very strange, her number was on the screen.  
She didn't know what was going to happen.  
We were going to meet two days later in the square next to the centre.*

#### USE: 'BE ON THE POINT OF'

[B2] Can use the simple past form of 'be' + 'on the point of' + '-ing' to talk about things that were expected to happen soon after a point in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In addition, when I was on the point of leaving the office, another phone rang.  
In fact he simulated his death to escape from the police, who were on the point of catching him for a penicillin racket.*

### Comments

This structure is very low frequency in both CLC and CEC

#### USE: 'WOULD'

[B1] Can use 'would' to talk about the future from a point in the past.► 'would'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've just bought a new dress, and a beautiful black T-shirt. When I saw them, I thought they would be great for tonight's party.  
... we thought that the film would be horrible because of the title but when the film started, the story was beautiful and Mauricio and I liked it a lot.  
As I saw the advert, I knew it would be a lovely birthday present.*

## FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

#### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use the affirmative form with 'will'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This summer I will have been working for three years for my company ...*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*This summer I will have been working for three years for my company and last month I was promoted to the Environment Department where I was allowed to use the "Save the Planet" project to take part into the competition.*

### Comments

Very low frequency item. No results for contracted forms

#### FORM: NEGATIVE

### Comments

No results for negative form or question form, probably due to lack of data

#### USE: ASSUMPTIONS

[C2] Can use the future perfect continuous to make assumptions about the present.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I do not think that this aspect is really necessary because it is supposed that ... you will have been studying very hard to occupy that job ....*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I do not think that this aspect is really necessary because it is supposed that you will be an adult for that moment and you will have been studying very hard to occupy that job ...*

### Comments

Very low frequency item.

## USE: LOOKING BACK FROM A POINT IN THE FUTURE

[B2] Can use the future perfect continuous to look back to the past from a point in the future and to emphasise the duration of an activity or event.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Now I am staying in Hastings in England and this month, I will have been studying English for seven months.*

*I think I could have a holiday just in July because I will have been working for my company for one year by the end of the June.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Now I stay in Hastings in England and by this month, I will have been studying English for seven months.*

*I think, I could have an holiday just in July because I will have been working in my previous company for one year by the end of the June and I will have a one month holiday period from my company.*

## FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use the affirmative form with 'will'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm sure I will have learned today's lesson by the next lesson.*

*It seems that the decorative role of clothes will have disappeared by the year 2050.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I'm sure I will have learned today's lesson by the next lesson.*

*It seems that the decorative role of clothes will have disappeared by the year of 2050.*

### Comments

There is no evidence in the CLC of the future perfect simple with 'shall' rather than 'will'.

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the negative form with 'will'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think that the best time for me to visit Scotland would be in July, because I will not have finished my university exams by June.*

*[talking about a cycling trip] Once we have finished, it we won't have done more than 40 km, and there are just another 10 to get to the Lakeside Inn.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I think that the best time for me to visit Scotland would be in July, because I will not have finished my university exams by June.*

*Once we have finished it we won't have done more than 40 km and there are just another 10 to get to the Lakeside Inn.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[C2] Can use the question form of the future perfect simple.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Will he have changed?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Will he have changed?*

### Comments

In general questions are low frequency in the CLC, because of the data is written rather than spoken. Questions forms with the future perfect simple are low frequency in the NS data too. .

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[C1] Can use the future perfect with adverbs (in the normal mid-position).

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you have ever read a fairytale by Hans Christian Andersen you will surely have discovered why this man is so famous worldwide.*

*However, sales will possibly have fallen to 5000 units again by the end of the year.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you have ever readen a fairytale by Hans Christian Andersen you will surely have discovered why this man is so famous worldwide.*

*However, sales will possibly have fallen to 5000 units again by the end of the year.*

### USE: ASSUMPTIONS

[C1] Can use the future perfect simple with 'will' to make assumptions about the present, particularly with 'you'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As you will have heard, this year's work experience programme in Britain was in general a success.*

*All of this is because her book will have included the cultural traditions that go with the dishes.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As you will have heard, this year's work experience programme in Britain was in general a succes.*

*All of this, is because her book will have included the cultural traditions that go with the dishes.*

### USE: EVENTS COMPLETED IN THE FUTURE

[B2] Can use the future perfect simple with 'will' to talk about something which is expected to be completed (or not completed) by a certain point in the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*There is no problem if you want to leave at 4.30 pm as the match will have finished by that time.*

*First of all, if you go to work by bicycle every day, at the end of the month you will have saved more money because you won't have spent it buying petrol.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*There is no problem if you want to leave at 4.30p.m. as the match will have finished by this time.*

*First of all, if you goes to work by bicycle every day, at the end of the month you will have saved more money because you won't have spent it buying petrol.*

## USE: POLITENESS

[C1] Can use the future perfect simple with 'will' as a politeness strategy, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[from a formal letter] I hope I will have reassured you.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I hope I will have reassured you.*

### Comments

This is very low frequency in the learner data.

## FUTURE SIMPLE (WITH WILL AND SHALL)

### FORM: NEGATIVE 'SHALL'

[C1] Can use the negative form 'shall not'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*However, we shall not forget to mention the legal and social consequences of such a merger to the average employees.*

*Therefore, my client shall not release you from the agreement, which is binding upon both parties.*

### Comments

There are only 2 occurrences of 'shan't' in the whole of the CLC, one at B1 and one at C2, therefore this form has been omitted. It may be more a feature of spoken data.

### USE: FIXED PLANS WITH 'WILL'

[B1] Can use 'will' to talk about fixed plans, often with timetabled times and dates.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The work will start at 8 a.m. and finish at 2 p.m. The new schedule starts on 1 June.*

*I won't be able to get there at the time we agreed.*

### USE: LONG-TERM INTENTIONS WITH 'SHALL'

[C2] Can use 'shall' to talk about long-term intentions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I must believe, believe in myself and in everybody else, and mainly in what I look for, this way I shall never lose hope.*

*I shall always remember it as the city of lights.*

*I shall always keep it in mind, in order to keep my children close to me and avoid being hated.*

*I came to the conclusion that the Excel Academy is not worth the money our company paid and that we shall not send further candidates there.*

### USE: PREDICTIONS WITH 'SHALL'

[C2] Can use 'shall' to make predictions, usually in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Once more I invite you wholeheartedly to stay at my place and I hope we shall meet in November.*

*... we shall probably have several years more to live.*

### USE: PREDICTIONS WITH 'WILL'

[B1] Can use 'will' and 'll' to make predictions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It will be hotter because of global warming.*

*But, if you go on holiday with your parents, there are some advantages too: you will not have money problems and your parents will not worry about you too much!*

*I won't live here in the future, because in March I'm moving to Lima, to study at the university.*

### USE: IMMEDIATE PLANS WITH 'SHALL'

[B1] Can use 'shall' with 'I' and 'we' to talk about plans and intentions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I promise that I shall cover all the work and give it to you tomorrow.*

*After that, I shall go to the beach.*

*We shall have a meeting regarding this next week.*

## FUTURE WITH BE GOING TO

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am not going to go to school tomorrow.*

*Also you can do whatever you want because there is not going to be an adult there to stop you.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I am not going to go to school tomorrow.*

*Also you can do whatever you want because there is not going to be an adult there to stop you.*

### Comments

Results here and elsewhere with 'be going to' are dominated by Romance language speakers.

## FORM: PAST

[B1] Can use the past form of 'be' + 'going to'. ► future in the past

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When we realized it was going to be an extremely hot day, we took water.*

*We were going to meet at 11.30 am but instead we will meet now at 2.30 pm at the same place.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*When we realized it was going to be an extremely hot day we took water.*

*We were going to meet at 11:30 am but instead of it now we will meet at 2:30pm at the same place.*

## FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use 'be' + 'going to' with a limited range of adverbs, after the auxiliary be form, in the normal mid position.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I know that I 'm never going to forget this moment.*

*Although we are really happy with your new and, maybe, better job, we are really going to miss you.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I know that I'm never going to forget this moment.*

*Although we are really happy with your new and, maybe, better job, we are really going to miss you.*

[C1] Can use 'be' + 'going to' with an increasing range of adverbs (particularly adverbs of certainty) in the normal mid position.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Mario Soares is already an old man, nearly 70, who is probably going to finish his active political life in 2 or 3 years.*

*As the new store is going to be the first and only one in Moscow, and, to make matters worse, it is going to be located close to our most successful outlet, it is undoubtedly going to have a detrimental effect on our company.*

*Additionally, many British people stay at "Tall Trees Campsite", so I guess we would be forced to speak English all the time, which is also great because it is surely going to help us to improve our English skills.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Mario Soares is already an old man, nearly 70, who is probably going to finish his active political life in 2 or 3 years.*

*As the new store is going to be the first and only one in Moscow, and, to make matters worse, it is going to be located close to our most successful outlet, it is undoubtedly going to have a detrimental effect on our company.*

*Additionally, many British people stay at "Tall Trees Campsite", so I guess we would be forced to speak English all the time, which is also great because it is surely going to help us to improve our English skills.*

[C2] Can use 'be' + 'going to' with a wide range of adverbs before the main verb.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*But I don't know if I'm going to still live here.*

*First, I am going to briefly introduce the three main activities offered by the club.*

*Nobody is going to even look at you when your sister is there.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*But I don't know if I'm going to still live here.*

*First, I am going to briefly introduce the three main activities offered by the club.*

*Nobody is going to even look at you when your sister is there.*

#### **Comments**

We have evidence here of split infinitives. This is frequent in informal native speaker language but is a structure which some teachers may wish to avoid for exam use if they think it is incorrect.

### **USE: FUTURE IN THE PAST**

[B1] Can use the past form of 'be going to' to refer to the future from a point in the past. ►  
future in the past

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*She didn't know what was going to happen.*

*We were going to meet two days later in the square next to the centre.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*She didn't now what was going to happen.*

*We were going to meet two days later in the square next to the centre.*

### **USE: INTENTIONS**

[B1] Can use the negative form of 'be going to' to talk about plans and intentions.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I'm not going to be able to meet you next Tuesday, because I have to go to the dentist at 5.30.*

*I'm sure I'm not going to live in Kutná Hora forever.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I'm not going to be able to meet you next Tuesday, because I have to go to the dentist at 5.30.*

*I'm sure I'm not going to live in Kutná Hora forever.*

### **USE: PLANS IN THE PAST**

[B1] Can use the past form of 'be going to' (often followed by 'but') to talk about a plan, sometimes one that may have changed.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*We were going to get married two months ago but we broke up and I really didn't know why.*

*We were going to have a cup of coffee on Tuesday morning, do you remember?*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*We were going to get married two months ago but we broke up and I really didn't know why.*

*We were going to have a cup of coffee on Tuesday morning, do you remember?*



## USE: PREDICTIONS

[B1] Can use 'be going to' with an increasing range of verbs to make predictions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think you're going to like it.*

*And don't you think you are going to miss your parents?*

*I think I am going to enjoy that class.*

*I think that I am not going to sleep tonight because tomorrow is an exciting and interesting day.*

*As a matter of fact, apart from teenagers programmes and children's cartoons, there is not much to watch, and this is not going to teach you many things about life!*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I think you're going to like it.*

*And don't you think you are going to miss your parents?*

*I think I am going to enjoy that class.*

*I think that I am not going to sleep tonight because tomorrow is an exciting and interesting day.*

*As a matter of fact, except teenagers programmes and children's cartoons, there is not much to watch, and this is not going to teach you many things about life!*

## USE: REPORTING

[B1] Can use the past form of 'be going to' as the reported form.► reported speech

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Fortunately, he was told his boss was going to be a bit late, so he had some time to go back home.*

*I was very worried but at the end he called me and told me he and his family were fine and that he was going to arrive tomorrow.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Fortunately, he was told his boss was going to be a bit late, so he had some time to go back home.*

*I was very worried but at the end he called me and told me he and his family were fine and that he was going to arrive tomorrow.*

## PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE USE

### FORM: INVERSION WITH 'ONLY WHEN'

[C2] Can use the present simple with 'only when' (followed by 'will' and inverted subject) to refer to the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Only when we understand that, will we be able to live in better societies.*

*Moreover, I think that only when people manage this will they be able to move on with their lives and offer something new to humanity.*

*And, sadly, I also believe that only when something really catastrophic happens will citizens face reality and accept that measures must be taken.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Only when we understand that, will we be able to live in better societies.*

*Moreover, I think that only when people manage this will they be able to move on with their lives and offer something new to the humanity and to the future generations.*

*And, sadly, I also believe that only when something really catastrophic happens will citizens face reality and accept that measures must be taken in order to improve everyone's lifestyle.*

### FORM: WITH 'AS SOON AS'

[B1] Can use the present simple with 'as soon as' to refer to the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm planning to move as soon as I finish college because job opportunities in my area aren't good.*

*I will let you know as soon as I get the exact date.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*To say the truth, I'm planning to move as soon as I finish college because job opportunities in my area aren't good around here, though I know I'm going to miss my friends and my family a lot.*

*we are expecting the film to be shown next weekend, I will let you know as soon as I get the exact date.*

### FORM: WITH 'BY THE TIME'

[C1] Can use the present simple with 'by the time' to refer to the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*... by the time he gets home, he will just want to go straight to bed.*

*By the time you arrive the information office at the airport will be closed, as at 11.00 o'clock a full day strike will start.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*By the time he gets home, he will just want to go straight to bed.*

*By the time you arrive the information office at the airport will be closed as at 11.00 o'clock a full day strike will start.*

### Comments

Note that there aren't many time conjunctions – they are quite a closed set, but their use with the present simple for future does develop as you move up the levels.

### USE: FUTURE ARRANGEMENTS

[B1] Can use the present continuous with an increasing range of verbs to talk about future arrangements.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm attending my grandmother's funeral tomorrow.*

*We're expecting a child very soon.*

*The movie is starting at 8 o'clock.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We are expecting a child very soon therefore would be great to have at least one room more.*

*The movie is starting at eight o'clock.*

[B2] Can use the present continuous with a wide range of verbs to talk about future arrangements.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*We're throwing a party for fun on 5th January.*

*She is joining the course on Friday.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*We are throwing a Party for fun on the fith of January 2004.*

*She is joining the course on Friday and likes it very much.*

**USE: QUESTIONS ABOUT THE FUTURE**

[B1] Can use the present continuous with an increasing range of verbs to ask about future plans.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Are you visiting my country on your next holiday?*

*Why are you moving to a different area?*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Are you visiting my country next holiday?*

*And why are you moving to a different area?*

[B2] Can use the present continuous with a wide range of common verbs to ask about future plans.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*So are you planning to visit Japan then?*

*When is the festival starting and when is it finishing?*

*What kind of seminar materials are you providing?*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*So are you planning to visit Japan then!?*

*Can you write me when is the festival starting and when is it finishing?*

*What kind of seminar materials are you providing?*

**Comments**

Note that the range of verbs increases, but only across common verbs that are associated with lower levels. There is very little lexical development going on, which could be related to task effect.

**USE: SUGGESTIONS, OBLIGATION**

[C1] Can use the present simple after speech act verbs expressing suggestions and obligation.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*We would suggest that our management takes a closer look.*

*I recommend that we go to the theatre in Ginza where "Miss Saigon" is on.*

*Moreover, we insist that the agreement between you is legally binding ....*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I recommend that we go to see the theatre in Ginza where "Miss Saigon" is on.*

*Moreover, we insist that the agreement between you is legally binding so without the consent of United Wheat Shippers you can't release yourself from the obligations to it and my client is not going to give you such consent.*

## MODALITY

### ADJECTIVES

#### FORM/USE: 'IF'-CLAUSE + 'POSSIBLE', POLITENESS

[B1] Can use 'if-' clauses + 'possible', as a politeness strategy.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If it is possible I would like to pay by credit card.*

*If possible, please re-deliver the same goods right now.*

*I'm not free at 6 so I'd change it to 9 if it's possible.*

*If it's possible, could you send the cards to my office in London?*

*I would prefer the 15th of July if it is possible.*

*The opening hours are quite convenient but, if possible, I would like the pool to open a bit earlier – at 8.30 am, for example.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If it is possible I would like to pay by credit card.*

*If possible, please re-deliver the same goods through another road line right now.*

*I'm not free at 6 so I'd change it to 9 if it's possible.*

*If it's possible, could you send the card's to my office in London?*

*I would prefer the 15th of July if it is possible.*

*The opening hours are quite convenient but, if possible, I would like the pool to open a bit earlier – at 8.30 am, for example.*

#### Comments

In spoken language especially, 'if it is possible' is sometimes tagged on after a statement and often ellipted to 'if possible'.

#### FORM/USE: 'IT' + 'BE' + ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE, HEDGING, EMPHASIS

[B1] Can use 'it' + 'be' + adjective + 'to' + infinitive, to make an assertion more or less direct.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Our sales department staff are heavily involved in several international projects, so it is necessary to improve their foreign language skills.*

*But sometimes it's essential to do what your parents want you to do.*

*In the centre of town it is possible to do more activities after school.*

*[talking about a computer problem] It was impossible to install the system.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It seems clear to me that swimming is good for the whole body.*

*It is obvious that some people prefer reading books.*

*It is possible that we can be educated by TV.*

*It seems obvious that it is not necessary.*

### Comments

This structure avoids the use of a personal subject + modal verb, therefore making the assertion less direct, e.g. it's essential to do what your parents want ... vs You have to do what your parents want ... There is a tendency to use It is possible/ necessary to instead of a modal verb – this could be due to L1 transfer.

### FORM/USE: 'IT' + LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVES + ('THAT') CLAUSE, FOCUS

[B2] Can use 'it' + linking verb + adjective + ('that') clause as a focusing device.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is clear that we can't live without computers today.*

*It seems obvious that this oil comes from the gas station.*

*Computers became part of the human life style because they help us to make our lives easier, but it is clear that we should never depend on machines to handle our lives.*

*Due to the introduction of a new staff appraisal form, it is crucial that you take part.*

*It's obvious you can't ride forty kilometres twice a day, unless you're very sporty.*

*It is essential that you know the advantages of our new product in order to sell this bag efficiently.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You are bound to leave for home with plenty of good memories.*

*They are unlikely to arrive on Friday.*

*We are sure to increase our turnover and at least our profit.*

*Whenever money is involved, some problems are likely to happen.*

*She was sure to have heard a shot.*

*[Talking about animals in zoos] They're obliged to live in small and uncomfortable cages.*

### FORM/USE: 'IT' + LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVES + CLAUSE, HEDGING

[B2] Can use 'it' + linking verb + adjective + ('that') clause to make an assertion less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It does not seem possible that we can live without any private life.*

*It is likely that by reading books we will learn some new words and phrases so that we will be able to write better.*

*It is possible that only one computer will do this.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It does not seem possible that we can live without any private life.*

*It is likely that by reading books we will learn some new words and phrases so that we will be able to write better.*

*It is possible that only one computer will do this.*

### FORM/USE: MODIFYING ADJECTIVES, EMPHASIS

[C1] Can modify adjectives with adverbs, often for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is painfully obvious that it will rescue our city from the pollution and fumes that cars are producing.*

*[talking about stolen goods] It is highly unlikely that the goods can vanish from your warehouse without that being noticed.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It is painfully obvious that it will rescue our city from pollution and fumes that cars are producing.*

*[Talking about stolen goods] It is highly unlikely that the goods can vanish from your warehouse without being noticed.*

## FORM/USE: MODIFYING ADJECTIVES, HEDGING

[C1] Can modify adjectives with degree adverbs, often to make an assertion less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you want to come earlier or if there's a public transport strike (which is quite probable), you will have to take a taxi.*

*It is almost certain that we'll have fights in the future but we will probably overcome them.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you want to come earlier or if there's a strike of public transport (which is quite probable) you will have to take a taxi.*

*It is almost certain that we'll have fights in the future but we will probably overcome them.*

## FORM: 'IT' + 'BE' + 'IMPORTANT' + CLAUSE

[B1] Can use 'it' + 'be' + 'important' + ('that') clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's important that you take breaks and don't work all the time.*

*It's important that you eat healthy food.*

*I think it's important that you analyze each point to decide what to do.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It's important that you make breaks and don't work all the time.*

*It's important that you make breaks and don't work all the time.*

*It's important that you eat healthy food.*

*I think it's important that you analyze each point to decide what to do.*

### Comments

Important is not considered a modal adjective but the structure (important + (that) clause) creates the modal meaning. At this level the grammatical structure is there, but it is not until B2 that there is a robust and widespread use of the structure with adjectives expressing both obligation and degrees of certainty.

## FORM: 'IT' + 'BE' + ADJECTIVE + 'FOR' + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use 'it' + 'be' + adjective + 'for' + object + 'to' + infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you have to choose between two schools, I think it's important for you to know what they're like.*

*It's impossible for me to meet with you at six o'clock.*

*It is important for everyone to attend this meeting.*

*[talking about not missing class] It's essential for me to go because I think I can't study physics by myself.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Our sales department staff is heavily involved in several international projects, so it is necessary to improve their foreign language skills.*

*But sometimes it's essential to do what your parents want you to do.*

*At the other side in the centre of town it is possible to do more activities after school.*

*[talking about a computer problem] It was impossible to install the system.*

### FORM: 'IT' + LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVES + CLAUSE

[B2] Can use 'it' + linking verb + adjective + ('that') clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It seems clear to me that swimming is good for the whole body.*

*It is obvious that some people prefer reading books.*

*It is possible that we can be educated by TV.*

*It seems obvious that it is not necessary.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you have to choose between two schools I think it's important for you to know how they are.*

*It's impossible for me to meet with you at six o'clock.*

*It is important for everyone to attend this meeting.*

*[Talking about not missing class] It's essential for me to go because I think I can't study physics by myself.*

### FORM: SUBJECT + 'BE' + ADJECTIVE + 'TO' + INFINITIVE

[B2] Can use pronoun or noun + 'be' + adjective + 'to' + (past) infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They are unlikely to arrive on Friday.*

*We are sure to increase our turnover and at least our profit.*

*Whenever money is involved, some problems are likely to happen.*

*If you see a movie, it is likely to have been made with computers.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It is clear that we can't live without computers today.*

*It seems obvious that this oil comes from the gas station.*

*Computers became part of the human life style because they help us to make our lives easier, but it is clear that we should never depend on machines to handle our lives.*

*Due to the introduction of a new staff appraisal form it is crucial that you take part.*

*It's obvious you can't ride twice a day forty kilometers, unless you're a great sportive.*

*It is essential that you know the advantages of our new product in order to sell this bag efficiently.*

## ADVERBS

### FORM/USE, 'POSSIBLY', POLITENESS

[B1] Can use 'could' + subject + 'possibly' to make requests more polite.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Could I possibly see you at 3.30?*

*Could you possibly recommend what action should be taken?*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Could I possibly see you at 3.30?*

*Could you possibly recommend what action should be taken?*

### FORM/USE, RESPONSE TOKENS

[C2] Can use adverbs expressing certainty as short responses.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Do I agree with this statement? Definitely.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Do I agree with this statement? Definitely.*

#### Comments

There is very little evidence of this because of the lack of spoken data.

### FORM/USE: 'NOT NECESSARILY'

[C1] Can use 'not necessarily' to express a possible exception to a general perception, i.e. not in every case.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*As a conclusion, I want to say that while what we wear doesn't necessarily define who we are, it does play a big part in it.*

*This is not necessarily the way the older generation would see it though.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As a conclusion, I want to say that, while what we wear doesn't necessarily define who we are, it does play a big part in it.*

*This is not necessarily the way the older generation would see it though.*

### FORM/USE: EMPHASIS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs, for emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If I were you I'd certainly choose not to go with your parents.*

*I will certainly ring you on Friday.*

*Well, with the job you've got, you obviously can't keep fit.*

*For these reasons, I definitely recommend staying in a city.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If I were you I'd certainly choose not to go with your parents.*

*I will certainly ring you on Friday.*

*Well, with the job you got, you obviously can't keep fit.*

*For these reasons, I definitely recommend staying in a city.*



### Comments

All of these are adverbs with an epistemic meaning. See C1 FORM/USE: ADVERBS, 'NOT NECESSARILY' for information on 'necessarily'.

### FORM/USE: MODAL VERB + MODAL ADVERB, HEDGING OR EMPHASIS

[B1] Can use modal verb + modal adverb to modify an assertion, either through hedging or emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Next year you can surely go somewhere with your friends.*

*You should probably bring sun block, because it's going be hot, and some food of course.*

*In my opinion if you decided to go to a large school in the centre of town, you would certainly meet a lot of cool people and you'd probably find it great.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Next year you can surely go somewhere with your friends.*

*I know that you are a calm and also shy person, so you may probably prefer going to a small school.*

*You should probably bring a sun block lotion, because it's going be hot, and some food of course.*

*In my opinion if you decide to go tot a large school in the centre of town, you would certainly meet a lot of cool people and you'd probably find it great.*

### FORM/USE: RESPONSE TOKENS

[C1] Can use 'not necessarily' as a short response.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Presents. Strips, bows, paper-wrapping. Thinking of Christmas? Not necessarily.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Presents. Strips, bows, paper-wrapping. Thinking of Christmas? Not necessarily.*

### Comments

There is very little evidence of this because of the lack of spoken data.

## CAN

### FORM/USE: PAST NEGATIVE, DEDUCTIONS

[C1] Can use 'can't' or 'cannot have' + '-ed' to make deductions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I live with my partner and we can't have used so much electricity.*

*...it cannot have been such a disappointment.*

*The air-conditioning cannot have been working properly as the coach was too cold.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use the negative question forms in main clauses and question tags.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Can't you go with your parents some time and with your friends later?*

*Why can't she visit them alone and I can relax at the beach?*

*You can ask your parents what they think you should do, can't you?*

## FORM: PASSIVE

[C1] Can use 'can' in passive reporting clauses in a more formal impersonal style (e.g. for reports and academic contexts), such as 'It can be said that', 'It can be argued (that)', 'It can be concluded that', 'It can be considered'. ► passives

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It can be argued, looking at the figures, that the company should consider withdrawing from the heater market.*

*Taking everything into account, it can be concluded that the current training course is very useful for our company.*

*As for marriage and relationships, it can be said that women who have a job, nowadays, do not quit it after marriage.*

## FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use 'can' with a limited range of adverbs (including 'also', 'always', 'even', 'just', 'only', 'really', 'still') in the normal mid position after the modal verb. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You can also write postcards and letters to your friends.*

*I can only tell you what I think about it, because you have to decide.*

*I can't even remember the girl's face.*

*The trouble is that I can't really afford it.*

[B2] Can use 'can' with an increasing range of adverbs (including 'easily', 'hardly', 'now', 'probably', 'sometimes', 'still') in the normal mid position after the modal verb or after the subject in questions. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In case you need them, I can easily provide references.*

*On the other hand you can hardly imagine an evening when you are sitting in your armchair, the tea is on the table and you are reading your favourite novel on a computer screen.*

*As you read her book, you can probably imagine what kind of personality she has got, and after finishing it, you will be more cheerful than before.*

[C1] Can use a wide range of adverbs with 'can' in the normal mid position after the modal verb). ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Only those who live with their relatives can fully understand how essential is the role of your parents, sisters, aunts...*

*Miss Sylvia Ann Powers is a good friend of mine for over six years, so I can honestly say that I know her personality fairly well.*

### Comments

Adverb use really increases at the C levels, not in terms of the range of different adverbs but the frequency of their use.

## USE: EMPHASIS

[C1] Can use expressions with 'can' or 'can't' to give focus or add emphasis, such as 'as you can see', 'I can't say', 'I can tell you that', 'as you can imagine', 'I can say that', 'I can assure you that'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*So, as you can see, there are no serious consequences for us, so far.*

*I can't say I was very impressed with the level and the way the classes were given.*

*About my country, I can tell you that we went through a great number of wars in the last century...*

### USE: GENERAL TRUTHS AND TENDENCIES

[B1] Can use 'can be' to talk about general truths and tendencies.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*... spending an entire summer without your friends can be very boring.*

*Sitting all day long in front of a computer can be very stressful.*

*The centre of town can be more dangerous and noisy.*

[B2] Can use 'can' to talk about general truths and tendencies.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*...some young people can feel bored when they have to walk a lot and look at [...] very old things.*

*Too much work can cause "stress" and heart problems.*

### USE: GUESSES AND PREDICTIONS

[B2] Can use the negative forms of 'can't' and 'cannot' to guess, predict and deduce.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You look very pale and you can't be feeling well.*

*I think that it can't be true.*

*[talking about someone suspected of being a criminal] He can't be; he is too young.*

*It cannot be any good for these animals to be taken away from their natural surroundings.*

### USE: REFLECTIONS

[C2] Can use 'how can' to reflect, through rhetorical questions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*And how can we improve if we are not allowed to make mistakes, evaluate our experiences in a new light and try again?*

*But how can each of us stay fit in this world of stress and fast food restaurants?*

### USE: REPROACHES AND APPEALS

[B2] Can use negative forms of 'can' to make reproaches or appeals.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You can't forget your friends.*

*...he can't go on behaving like this.*

*Please, listen, you can't go on studying so hard.*

*You have to realise that you cannot work all the time: your body needs some rest.*

*Can't you see how exhausted you are?*

### USE: SURPRISE

[B1] Can use 'can you believe' to express surprise.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They invented a robot which plays football, can you believe this?  
It cost me £50! Can you believe that! It was expensive but worth it!*

## COULD

### FORM: PAST

[B2] Can use 'could' have + '-ed'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In fact it could have been dangerous but it became funny and also an embarrassing moment in my life!*

*What could have happened?*

*I must confess that our teacher couldn't have picked anyone better to do it.*

### USE: ABILITY

[B1] Can use the affirmative form of 'could' to talk about ability.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*? she could hear a man talking, he was giving her orders?*

### Comments

In both the NS data and the learner data, past ability with affirmative 'could' is relatively low freq. The negative form 'couldn't' for (in)ability is much more common.

### USE: CRITICISM

[C1] Can use 'could have' + '-ed' form to express disapproval or criticism.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Since your travel company chose a hotel that far from the city, I think that you could have arranged entertainment at the hotel.*

*? for the money they had paid, you could have given them a better service (hotel, restaurant and evening entertainment).*

### USE: PAST POSSIBILITY

[B2] Can use affirmative 'could' have + '-ed' to talk about past possibility.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Alice was disappointed that her mother could have phoned her but she did not.*

*I think that all these problems could have been avoided and that asking my money back is the best way of forgetting that evening.*

*I was grateful to them because the ticket was so expensive that I couldn't have bought it.*

### USE: PAST SPECULATION

[B2] Can use 'could have' + '-ed' to speculate about the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I thought perhaps a thief could have entered my house.*

*? she could have ruined everything I had been preparing for almost four weeks.*

*If he had mugged her, who could have saved her?*

### USE: PERMISSION

[B1] Can use 'could I' to seek permission.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am in the basketball team of my school and tomorrow there is an important game. Could I take the class that I will miss on Saturday?*

*?my mother went to the shop and bought the game. She said: "David, I have got something for you" ? I said, ?Could I play with it now, please??*

#### USE: POSSIBILITY

[B1] Can use 'could' to talk about possibility.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But believe me, it could be really fun to have a talkative person as your friend, he or she will give you good laugh at anytime!*

*Could this really happen? Could he really be there, in that dark café ??*

#### USE: REGRET

[B2] Can use 'could have' + '-ed' to talk about regrets.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I wish I could have stayed, especially to help the children.*

*[someone reflecting on their performance as part of a team at work] I could have listened more to my team members and learned from the experienced ones.*

#### USE: REPORTED SPEECH

[B2] Can use 'could' as the past form of 'can' in reported speech.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I told them I couldn't go because I didn't have money, I wasn't honest!*

*The woman said she could put me up if I wanted, and led me to a house nearby.*

#### USE: SPECULATION

[C2] Can use 'couldn't have' + '-ed' to speculate about the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Imagine my dismay when I realised I hadn't brought back the notebook from the pub. Surely I couldn't have left it on my seat.*

*[speculating about a lost diary] ? her mother couldn't have hidden it there just like that. It just wasn't like her. She must have put it away there and then forgotten about it.*

#### USE: SUGGESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'could' with an increasing range of verbs to make suggestions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*?you could become a member of a gym.*

*We could meet in the nice cafe next to your house and have a coffee.*

*I'm afraid that I need to change the time of our meeting. Could it be at 5.30 pm?*

## DARE

#### FORM/USE: 'I DARE SAY'

[C1] Can use the fixed expression 'I dare say' to say that something is probably true.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I feel that I have a huge responsibility trying to choose only one option, but I dare say that the last option may be the best one.*

*I must express my concern about some facilities, like the student study centre and the canteen, which I dare say needs improvement.*

### Comments

See comment at B2 'affirmative'

### FORM/USE: NEGATIVE WITH 'DIDN'T'

[C2] Can use the negative form 'didn't dare' + infinitive without 'to' to talk about not being brave enough to do something.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She didn't dare think about him and the possibility that he would never come back.*

*Since we didn't dare move our feet, we were slowly swaying to the left and to the right, backwards and forwards.*

### Comments

See comment at B2 'affirmative'

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use affirmative form dare + infinitive without to.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I can cook if you dare eat it!*

### Comments

LOW FREQUENCY ITEM. There is very little use of 'dare' as a semi-modal in CLC even at C2 level. Most examples are dare as main verb not functioning as a modal verb. |At C level there is lots of evidence of 'dare' + 'to' inf and lots of errors with 'dare' + '-ing'

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use negative form dare not and daren't + infinitive without to.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a restaurant] But many local people dare not go to Lily, because it is too expensive.*

### Comments

LOW FREQUENCY ITEM: There are very few examples of 'dare not' and 'daren't' in the CLC. See also comment at B2 'affirmative'.

### FORM: QUESTION

[C1] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Dare we run the risk of even one child or adult turning to violent crime because they think it is ok?*

### Comments

See comment at B2 'affirmative'

**USE: 'HOW DARE ...!'**

[C1] Can use 'how dare ... !' to express disapproval or offense about something

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*How dare people say that we don't practice sport!*

*... how dare you say that this event was a complete failure!*

**Comments**

See comment at B2 'affirmative'

**USE: BRAVADO**

[B2] Can use semi-modal 'dare' to talk about being brave enough to do something.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Some people object that I have to put up with the rain and other inconveniences, but I think that they are rather jealous because they daren't give up their car.*

**Comments**

LOW FREQUENCY ITEM: There are very few examples of 'dare not' and 'daren't' in the CLC. See also comment at B2 'affirmative'

**EXPRESSIONS WITH BE****FORM/USE: 'BE MORE/LESS LIKELY', COMPARISON**

[B2] Can use '(much) more/less' to modify 'likely' in a comparison.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*In case of an accident, one is more likely to be badly injured when riding a bicycle.*

*Since they are more and better educated when they leave school at 18 years old, their minds are more mature and they are more sensible. They are more likely to have better jobs and a better life, and much less likely to cause problems to other people.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*In case of an accident one is more likely to be badly injured when riding a bicycle.*

*Since they are more and better educated when they leave school at 18 yrs old, their minds are more mature, they are more likely having better jobs and better life and much less likely to cause crimes and proplems to other people.*

**FORM/USE: 'BE' + ADJECTIVE + 'NOT' + 'TO'**

[C2] Can use 'be' + adjective + 'not' + 'to' + infinitive for emphasis.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*People should be obliged not to have more than a very small number of children otherwise they will be punished.*

*Now without her knowledge, I know everything about her and she is bound not to conceal the truth!*

*Indeed, whatever path parents choose, they are almost certain not to do a good job.*

*Be sure not to miss the alligator steak.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*People should be obliged not to have more than a very small number of children otherwise they will be punished.*

*Now without her knowledge, I know everything about her and she is bound not to conceal the truth!*

*Indeed, whatever path parents choose, they are almost certain not to do a good job.*

*Be sure not to miss the alligator steak.*

### FORM/USE: HEDGING

[C1] Can use 'be' + 'not' + adjective + 'that-' clause to make an assertion less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a town near a dump where people cannot open their windows] I am not certain that they have got used to it.*

*[talking about distractions while studying] It's not likely that you'll make progress.*

*As you can see, I'm really in favour of this plan but I'm not sure that the council has anticipated everything.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[Talking about a town near a dump where people cannot open their windows] I am not certain that they have got used to it.*

*[Talking about distractions while studying] It's not likely that you'll make progress.*

*As you can see, I'm really in favour of this plan but I'm not sure that the council has anticipated everything.*

### FORM/USE: IMPERATIVE

[B2] Can use the imperative form 'be sure to', to express obligation.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you cannot attend, be sure to inform me in advance.*

*Be sure to contact me for any further information.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you cannot attend, be sure to inform me in advance.*

*Be sure to contact me for any further information.*

### Comments

There are no instances of the imperative with 'certain' in the CLC. This tallies with the NS data where there is only one instance of Be certain to in the BNC written.

### FORM: 'BE' + ADJECTIVE + 'THAT'

[B2] Can use 'be' + 'obvious/sure/likely/certain' followed by a 'that'-clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is about 1000 years old, so I am sure that you will find it fascinating to see it.*

*It was obvious that I would be late to work.*

*It is likely that by reading books we will learn some new words and phrases so that we will be able to write better.*

*It is certain that our state-of-the-art LCD will be well received and make great profits.*



### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It is about 1000 years old, so I am sure that you will find it fascinating to see it.*

*It was obvious that I would be late at my work.*

*It is likely that by reading books we will learn some new words and phrases so that we will be able to write better.*

*It is certain that our state-of-the-art LCD will be well received and make great profits.*

### Comments

Examples here are with both a human subject 'I am sure that' and 'it' + adjective, for example 'It's obvious that', since the grammatical pattern is the same.

### FORM: 'BE' EXPRESSIONS

[B1] Can use a limited range of expressions with 'be' + infinitive ('be allowed to', 'be supposed to', 'be able to') with present and past forms of 'be' and with modal 'will'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*First of all, if you are allowed to go out of the building in your break, you should do it.*

*Perhaps you will be allowed to go on holiday with your friends next year.*

*The film is supposed to start at 7.00 pm so we'd better meet at 6.30 pm. See you there!*

*I was supposed to be meeting my friend Laura but she didn't come.*

*I am sorry but I am not able to meet you next Tuesday.*

*We were able to choose the songs ourselves and so I liked them very much.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*First of all if you are allowed to go out of the building in your break you should do it.*

*Perhaps you will be allowed to go on holiday with your friends next year.*

*The film is supposed to start at 7.00 pm so we'd better meet at 6:30 p.m. See you, there!*

*I wasn't supposed to be here I was supposed to be meeting my friend Laura but she didn't come.*

### Comments

Note interesting use of future in the past I 'wasn't supposed to be here I was supposed to be meeting my friend Laura but she didn't come'. (France; B1 THRESHOLD; 2009; French; Pass)

### FORM: 'BE' EXPRESSIONS + INFINITIVE

[B2] Can use the full range of expressions with 'be' + infinitive ('be likely to', 'be due to', 'be meant to', 'be bound to', 'be sure to', 'be certain to', 'be obliged to') with present and past forms of 'be' and with modal 'will' .

### Corrected Learner Examples

*People who read books are likely to be more knowledgeable.*

*I'm bound to feel nervous.*

*According to our new marketing strategy, we are sure to increase our turnover and our profit.*

*[talking about a new job] I am due to start on Monday 4 June.*

*I would like to inform you that as of 1st of June all operational staff will be obliged to use identity cards.*

*Sleepy and unwilling to take part of the conference, I was obliged to spend the evening listening to the soft voice of a man who was famous for his boring performances.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*People who read books are likely to be more knowledgeable since they get informed.*

*I'm bound to feel nervous.*

*According to our new marketing strategy we are sure to increase our turnover and at least our profit.*

*[talking about a new job] I am due to start on Monday 4 June.*

### FORM: MODAL WITH 'BE ABLE TO'

[B1] Can use a range of modal verbs + 'be able to' + infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*After finishing school, you might be able to hang out with your friends.*

*If we could meet in Switzerland, we should be able to finish the project on the 20th June.*

*I'd be able to take walks without even worrying about inhaling polluted air.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*After finishing school, you might be able to hang out with your friends.*

*If we could meet in Switzerland, we should be able to finish the project on the 20th June.*

*I'd be able to take walks without even worrying about inhaling polluted air.*

### Comments

Possibly due to the range of tasks, many of the examples are found in the context of business exams at B1. The range of examples is greater in general exams at B2.

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[C2] Can use 'be' + 'not' + adjective + 'to' + infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The country's population is not likely to increase fast enough.*

*[talking about relatives] You are not obliged to invite them over.*

*[talking about tourism] Its positive effects are not certain to outweigh the negative ones.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The country's population is not likely to increase fast enough.*

*[Talking about relatives] You are not obliged to invite them over.*

*[Talking about tourism] Its positive effects are not certain to outweigh the negative ones.*

### USE: 'BE ABLE TO', PAST

[B1] Can use 'was able to', 'were able to' to talk about facts in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[about a bus journey] She was able to get a good seat and she unexpectedly got to school early.*

*... sales had increased recently because of the good performance of our staff so we were able to improve the quality of our products ...*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[about a bus journey] She was able to get a good seat and she unexpectedly got to school early.*

*We were able to choose the songs ourselves and so I liked them very much.*

*... sales had increased recently because of the well performance of our staff so we were able to improve the quality of our products ...*

### USE: 'BE ALLOWED TO', PERMISSION

[B1] Can use 'be allowed to' to talk about permission.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*My mother went with me on this trip because I wasn't allowed to go by myself.*

*You won't be allowed to do what you want and you won't enjoy yourself.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*My mother went with me on this trip because I wasn't allowed to go by myself.*

*Perhaps you will be allowed to go on holiday with your friends next year.*

*You won't be allowed to do what you want and you won't enjoy yourself.*

### USE: 'BE BOUND TO', CERTAINTY

[B2] Can use 'be' (+ modifier) 'bound to' to talk about something certain or inevitable.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I assure you that it is bound to be popular with different clients, especially young people and white-collar workers.*

*It is hardly possible to catch a cold when travelling by car in rain which is almost bound to happen while riding a bicycle.*

*To sum up, where many people get together, problems are bound to arise.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I assure you that it is bound to be popular with different clients, especially those young people and the white-collar.*

*It is hardly possible to catch a cold when travelling by car in rain which is almost bound to happen while riding a bicycle.*

*To sum up, where many people get together, problems are bound to arise.*

### Comments

Note that at B2 learners can modify these adjectives, for example, 'almost bound', 'quite certain'...

### USE: 'BE DUE TO', 'BE TO', SCHEDULES

[B2] Can use 'be due to' and, more formally, 'be to' to talk about things that are scheduled or expected.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have attached the ... company law directive enacted 2 years ago and which is due to be implemented by 2008.*

*The programme was due to start at midday.*

*I am sorry that I cannot attend the meeting at head office as expected, as I am to go on a business trip to New York then.*

*I was to take exams in two weeks and had to study hard.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I have attached the ... company law directive enacted 2 years ago and which is due to be implemented by 2008.*

*The programme was due to start at midday*

*I am sorry that I can not attend the meeting at head office as expected, as I am to go on a business trip to New York then.*

*I was to take exams in two week and had to study hard ...*

### Comments

The 'be to' form is very low frequency in the CLC and the NS corpus.

### USE: 'BE FORCED TO', OBLIGATION

[B2] Can use 'be forced to' to talk about an unnamed obligation, where the circumstances are beyond the control of the speaker/writer.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I don't like to be forced to do something that I don't want to do.*

*Due to decreasing sales over the last months, we are forced to cut the budget.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I don't like to be forced to do something what I don't want to do.*

*Due to decreasing sales over the last months we are forced to cut the budget*

### USE: 'BE LIKELY TO', PROBABILITY

[B2] Can use 'be' (+modifier) 'likely to' to talk about probability.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*And whenever money is involved, some problems are likely to happen.*

*I am very likely to make mistakes which I would like to avoid.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*And whenever money is involved, some problems are likely to happen.*

*I am very likely to make mistakes which I would like to avoid.*

### USE: 'BE MEANT TO', IDEAL STATES

[B2] Can use 'be meant to' to talk about ideal states.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Animals are meant to be free, and man should be very careful about interfering with nature.*

*Primary school is meant to be there so that you build all the basics of your education.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Animals are meant to be free, and man should be very careful to interfere with nature.*

*Primary school is meant to be there so that you built all the basics of your eduction.*

### Comments

There are 2.6 per million occurrences of 'be meant to' in CLC but in BNC there are only 0.2 per million occurrences.

### USE: 'BE OBLIGED TO', OBLIGATION

[B2] Can use 'be obliged to' to talk about an external obligation, especially in institutional contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The Sales Representatives are obliged to participate.*

*By January 2 everybody is obliged to have a parking permit when using the company car park.  
They were obliged to give up their house.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*The Sales Representatives are obliged to participate.*

*By January 2 everybody is obliged to have a parking permit when using the company car park.  
They were obliged to give up their house.*

### **Comments**

There are a lot of instances of be obliged to where the grammatical structure is correct but is being used incorrectly to talk about a self-imposed obligation, e.g. I am obliged to admit having already caught a cold. Not obliged to doesn't appear until C1, probably due to lack of opportunity of use. We are not obliged to stay in the office waiting for calls. (SfLL2; C1; Arabic)

### **USE: 'BE SET TO', ASSERTION**

[C1] Can use 'be set to' to talk about strong assertion about the future, especially in institutional contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The turnover of our company is set to increase dramatically after the establishment of the e-shop, which itself requires little investment.*

*The population of children is set to plummet to 11.5% and that of working people also to 46.2% in 2050.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*The population of children (0 to 14) is set to decrease to 37% and the population of senior citizens is set to increase to 5.7%*

*This report is set to compare TELECARS and STREETLIGHT CABS in order to select a proper taxi firm for our company.*

### **Comments**

This pattern is used especially in business contexts.

### **USE: 'BE SUPPOSED TO', HEARSAY**

[B2] Can use 'be supposed to' to talk about hearsay or supposition.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*That woman is supposed to have killed her husbands (at least two), because she wanted their money.*

*The lake is supposed to be very beautiful.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*That woman is supposed to have killed her husbands (at least two), because she wanted their money.*

*The lake is supposed to be very beautiful.*

### **USE: 'BE SUPPOSED TO', OBLIGATION, EXPECTATION**

[B2] Can use 'be supposed to' to talk about expectation or obligation.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*However, the show is only on the 14th of March, the same day we are supposed to go to a Science Museum.*

*Our travels are supposed to provide us with pleasure, knowledge and new experiences.*

*I have bought some disks but I don't know what I am supposed to do with them.*

*I was supposed to explain to them what they had to do.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*However, the show is only on the 14th of March the same day we are supposed to go to a Science Museum.*

*Travels are supposed to provide us with pleasure, knowledge and new experiences.*

*I have bought some disks but I don't know what I am supposed to do with them.*

*I was supposed to explain to them what they had to do.*

### **USE: 'BE SUPPOSED TO', PAST EXPECTATION**

[B1] Can use 'was supposed to', 'were supposed to' to refer to past or future arrangements which may not have happened or may change.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I am really sorry, but I will have to make some changes to my trip. I was supposed to arrive on 11th June 2003, but I will arrive the next month.*

*It was supposed to be on Tuesday at 1.00pm.*

*We were supposed to meet at noon with some friends, but they called her to ask if we could meet at the restaurant.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I am really sorry, but I will have to make change for my trip, I was supposed to arrive on 11th June 2003, but I will arrive the next month.*

*It was supposed to be on Tuesday at 1:00pm.*

*We were supposed to meet at noon with some friends, but they called her to ask if we could meet at the restaurant.*

### **USE: 'BE SURE/CERTAIN TO'**

[B2] Can use 'be sure to', 'be certain to' to talk about certainty.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*A person that will act in that way is sure to be successful.*

*Furthermore, by bicycle, you don't spend your time in traffic-jams and you are sure to arrive at work on time.*

*The market for this product is not yet fully developed, but we are certain to attract more and more people, especially students.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*A person that will act in that way is sure to be successfull.*

*Furthermore, by bicycle, you don't spend your time into traffic-jams and you are sure to arrive at work in time.*

*The market of this product is not yet fully developed, but we are certain to attract more and more people, especially students.*

## HAVE (GOT) TO

### FORM/USE: 'I HAVE TO ADMIT'

[B1] Can use the fixed expression 'I have to admit' for emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have to admit that I watch a lot of TV, specially movies and soap operas, I love them.*

*I have to admit that it is a very difficult choice.*

### FORM: INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use 'have to' as an infinitive form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am going to have to buy new curtains.*

*I'm sorry to have to change the time of our meeting next Tuesday.*

*I'd hate to have to choose between family and friends.*

### FORM: PAST

[C2] Can use 'have to have' + '-ed'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about urban versus rural life] In order to have an objective view on which lifestyle tends to be more problematic, you certainly have to have lived at each setting for a rather extensive time period.*

*They stop at the most famous places, which you "have to have seen", jump down and take photographs, always chatting with each other.*

### USE: DEDUCTIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

[C2] Can use a range of present and past forms of 'have (got) to' to talk about deductions and conclusions. ► must ► had to

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a castle on a small island] It's got to be incredible to see a castle emerging from the sea.*

*[wondering why his mother has suddenly decided to come to his house] There had to be something else since she was definitely not the kind of person who drops by without asking. Yes, I was sure, it had to have been Peter.*

### USE: OBLIGATION

[C2] Can use present and past forms of 'have to' + '-ed' to talk about obligations in the past.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Nowadays, one has to have finished at least senior high school for any employer to consider hiring you.*

*The State Universities have a higher level of education than Public Universities, but usually to get into a State University you had to have been studying in a public school.*

### USE: SUGGESTION

[B2] Can use 'you (have) got to' to make a strong suggestion.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you think you have seen almost everything in this world, you've got to see this museum.*

*[talking about a famous actor] You have to see at least one of her films ... I think if you haven't seen her films, you haven't lived at all!*

*You have to relax. You should try to live. You don't know what's going on around you.*

*The main thing to remember is that there many possibilities but you have to try to find them and not just say: "I want to work and earn money".*

## MAY

### FORM/USE: 'MAY AS WELL'

[C2] Can use 'may as well' to talk about what we think is the easiest or most logical course of action, often when we cannot see a better alternative or when it will not spoil the situation if you do that thing. ► might

### Corrected Learner Examples

*A few minutes later, she began hesitantly: "After all, you may as well know..."*

*I may as well see the other things.*

### Comments

This is at C1 in EVP but most of the C1 examples are either from Business English candidates or are not pragmatically correct. ||NB this structure tends to be more spoken than written.

### FORM/USE: 'MAY WELL'

[C1] Can use 'may well' to give emphasis to something unexpected.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think they may well come to an agreement on these payment problems.*

*In general a week's work experience is a good way for a high school student to get familiar with the world of work. It may well be that after leaving school they become our employees.*

### FORM/USE: PAST AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use 'may have' + '-ed' to talk about possibility in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think that he may have forgiven me for that accident ... !*

*As you may have noticed, there has been a delay setting up the new computer system.*

*[talking about buying something online] Another disadvantage is that you may have received the wrong size or colour.*

*Now, you may have seen your beautiful blue vase is not in your room any more; I broke it ...!*

### FORM/USE: PAST NEGATIVE

[C1] Can use 'may not have' + '-ed' to talk about possibility in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The percentage of Dutch people eating a big, hot breakfast may not have been as high as of English people, but it has certainly reduced.*

*Apart from the income from both partners, it helps them meet other people thereby acquiring other skills they may not have obtained by staying or working from home.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative form.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*I knew I may not meet him again.*

*I realise that may not be the best way of resolving your problem.*

*They may not even have internet in the countryside!*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use the question form with 'I'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*May I give you a short presentation on 17th December?*

*May I ask you about my accommodation?*

*May I ask you if our company will receive the usual 10% discount?*

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use 'may' with a limited range of adverbs (most commonly 'also') in the normal mid-position after the modal verb. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I may also ask you for another favour...*

*Why don't you try going to the gym before work? It may also help you release stress?*

[B2] Can use 'may' with an increasing range of adverbs (most commonly 'even', 'only', 'already', 'never', 'just', 'sometimes') in the normal mid-position after the modal verb. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When you're reading books, you may even find words you don't know and if you're an interested person, you will try to find out what it means, thus improving your vocabulary.*

*Think of all the children living in cities, they may never get the chance to come near any animals at all.*

### USE: COMMAND

[B2] Can use 'may I' to make a polite request, command or suggestion in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*May I have your attention please?*

*May I ask you to use e-mail or postal services whenever possible?*

*In terms of how we are going to travel around while we are there, may I suggest that we use the two bicycles that are at the house?*

### USE: CONCESSION

[C2] Can use 'may' in a subordinate clause expressing concession with 'however', 'whatever', 'whoever' ... + 'it or this may be or seem'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But honestly, I am sure that the price of the watch also contributes its part, however small it may be, to my love of it.*

*Nowadays, however useful it may seem, travel has proved to be pointless as far as broadening the mind is concerned.*

*The most important thing is that people enjoy what they are doing whatever it may be and wherever it takes place.*

*Nowadays, one of the main goals of people in society is to achieve success, in whatever field it may be.*

### USE: FOCUSING

[B2] Can use 'may' in phrases such as 'you may know', or 'as you may have' + '-ed' to focus the reader on shared knowledge.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I usually take more than one book because, as you may know, it takes many hours to get there.*

*As you may have heard, I am going to change to the engineering department.*

*As you may have understood, the best opportunity to take photos will be during the performance, but you might also find backstage photos interesting.*

### USE: HEDGING

[C2] Can use 'it may be' + '-ed' that as a hedging device when drawing conclusions and summarising, particularly in academic contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*On balance, it may be concluded that although international sports competitions do involve such factors as serious and physical strain and commercial gain, their ultimate aim remains unchanged – namely, to find out in a fair way who deserves the title of the winner.*

*It may be argued that a child's academic success is crucial to his or her future.*

*It may be argued that the career span of an athlete is quite short and therefore money earned is well deserved.*

### USE: OPINION

[B2] Can use 'may ... but' to express an unexpected point of view.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This may surprise you but I've managed to lose some weight, which I'm proud of.*

*[talking about cleaning musical instruments] You may think that it is quite boring but it is not.*

### USE: PERMISSION

[B1] Can use 'may I' to ask for permission.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*May I be your guide while you stay here?*

*May I borrow your bike?*

### Comments

There are lots of examples of 'may' being used at A2 in a permission context which are structurally correct but pragmatically wrong, e.g. 'You may come to my house at 6 p.m.'

## USE: POLITE REQUEST

[B2] Can use 'may I' to make a polite request for permission.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Sir, may I come in?*

*May I ask you if your special offer will be still available in September?*

*May I speak to Miss Wright, please?*

## MIGHT

### FORM: 'MIGHT AS WELL'

[C2] Can use 'might as well', mostly to talk about or suggest what we think is the easiest or most logical course of action, often when we cannot see a better alternative. ► 'may'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Living longer allows you to fulfil the different stages of your personal development, and if you reach the necessary maturity and integrity that corresponds to this stage of your life, you might as well make the best of these years.*

*What should be changed about travelling and spending one's holiday is that the people, in my opinion, should decide on what they want to do during their holidays: If they only want to have fun, they might as well stay at home.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I like to wear a shirt and pants. It might not be very fashionable, it might look simple, but that's the way I like it.*

*I think that people watch too much TV these days and in a way this mightn't be such a good thing.*

### FORM: PAST AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use 'might have' + '-ed'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about an unusual sound] It might have been our neighbours' cat.*

*They might have been right, but I don't agree with them.*

*He might have seen us.*

*In years past, you might have gone straight from school to your family's farm or joined your parents in the factory they worked in.*

### FORM: PAST, NEGATIVE

[C1] Can use 'might not have' + '-ed'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*First of all, not 45 but only 35 stalls were promised, meaning the disappointment you mentioned might not have been as bad as you, or whoever gave you the information, thought it was.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[C1] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Could it be possible that your company sent me the wrong bill, or might it be the bill from the last person who lived in my house?*

*Might it not be a good idea to change the travel company you are working with next time?*

### USE: CONSOLING OR JUSTIFYING

[C1] Can use 'might' followed by 'but' to console or justify.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The argument that fashion reflects people's attitudes and behaviour might sound superficial, but on closer examination it turns out to be true.*

*The idea of going to work-out to keep fit might be tedious sometimes but the majority of young people are interested in taking up an activity these days.*

*All in all, it might not have been a huge success, but people enjoyed themselves.*

*You might not have been able to "change the world" but maybe you have made a difference to one or two people.*

### USE: EMPHASIS

[C2] Can use 'try as I might' for emphasis at the beginning of a sentence.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Try as I might, I was never able to persuade her to go for a walk.*

*Try as I might, I cannot imagine a world without music.*

*Try as I might, I can't see an explanation ....*

### USE: FOCUS

[B1] Can use 'might' in phrases, such as 'as you might know', 'have already heard', to focus the reader on shared knowledge.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As you might know, nobody came here until Wednesday afternoon.*

*As you might know, I've been very busy recently taking my exams.*

*As you might have noticed, I broke your beautiful vase which was in the hall.*

*As you might have already heard, there is a delay with the setting of the new computer system.*

### USE: POLITE CRITICISM

[C1] Can use the question form to make polite criticisms and suggestions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Last but not least, might it not be wise if you had more trips ...?*

*Also might I suggest that we have more exiting publicity for the club?*

*As for the musicals running in London, might I suggest that you arrange for seats where one can both see and listen?*

### USE: POSSIBILITY IN THE PAST

[B1] Can use 'might have' + '-ed' to talk about possibility with a past reference.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Many things might have led to these changes.*

*I thought that a burglar might have broken into our house.*

[C1] Can use 'might not have' + '-ed' to talk about possibility with a past reference.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The survey, mentioned in the local newspaper yesterday, might not have asked an accurate sample of people.*

*Even though things might not have gone as you expected or as you would like them to have, we have to remind you we are dealing with charity here.*

#### USE: REPORTED SPEECH

[B1] Can use 'might' as the past form of 'may' in indirect reports.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*... my parents said it might be the last holiday where we are all together.*

*[talking about a lottery ticket] Lisa thought it might be a lucky one so she showed it to her Dad.*

#### USE: SUGGESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'might' to make polite suggestions and give advice.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The park is a great place for picnic. It has lots of trees, a beautiful view and fresh air. You might need to bring some food and drink.*

*I really don't know what you should do, but I think that you might talk with your parents.*

## MUST

#### FORM: ELLIPSIS

[B1] Can use 'must' with the following verb ellipsed where the previous main verb is understood.

► ellipsis

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You must! It's amazing!*

*To sum it up, right now, I take care of her because I must!*

[B1] Can use ellipsed 'must' without a subject. ► ellipsis

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[at the end of a letter] Must go now.*

*Must be really difficult for you.*

#### Comments

Ellipsis is more typically found in spoken language than written language.

[C2] Can use ellipsed 'must have' + '-ed' without a subject. ► ellipsis

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[from a story] 'Must have fallen out of a car, or somfin'" This was his next thought.*

#### Comments

Ellipsis is more typically found in spoken language than written language.

#### FORM: INVERSION

[C2] Can invert 'must' and the subject after negative phrases, e.g. 'not only', 'never', 'nor', to change the focus and give prominence/emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not only must you study really hard during university, but also keep studying afterwards.*

*To sum up, my opinion is that education is sacred, necessary and useful to all of us and never must it be characterised as "a waste of time".*

*[talking about personality] Nor must we overlook the human qualities.*

### FORM: PAST AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use 'must have' + '-ed'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When I realized that he must have forgotten, I called him up.*

*We had lots of fun learning how to ski. It was pretty hard at the beginning. I must have fallen about fifty times.*

### FORM: PAST, NEGATIVE

[C2] Can use 'must not have been' (especially with 'easy').

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But I would like to stress that I was really happy that she found another husband, although she had three little children which must not have been easy for him.*

*Something I have missed on behalf of my father is a bit more tenderness, but again I am guessing it must not have been easy for him to be a post-war-time son of a widow.*

*It mustn't have been more than an hour after the first announcement of the captain that there was a second one.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B2] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Is it possible to use the prize next year or must I cancel my trip to India?*

*Finally, how much money must I bring with me?*

### Comments

Example no.2: note that NS would more commonly use should in this context

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use 'must' with a limited range of adverbs (most commonly 'also') in the normal mid position after the modal verb. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I must also do the FCE practice test because I will have the FCE test soon.*

*... first you must always watch what you eat ...*

[B2] Can use 'must' with an increasing range of adverbs (including 'all', 'never', 'strongly', 'first') in the normal mid position after the modal verb. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*To sum up, we must all act immediately because the existence of humanity may be in danger.*

*But there is one, just one thing we must never forget: we have to be authentic.*

*[talking about a guide book] In addition I must strongly recommend you add something about nightlife.*

[C2] Can use 'must' with a wide range of adverbs in the normal mid position after the modal verb. ► adverbs|

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*There must certainly be other solutions to the problem of the need for space for new houses.*

*RECOMMENDATION In my opinion our town must clearly use this area to create a park and a playground for children.*

*I must completely disagree with this statement, since I believe that in all jobs or occupations only the good professionals are able to earn a lot of money.*

#### **USE: CONCESSIONS**

[B2] Can use the fixed expression 'I must admit' or 'you must admit' to express concession.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*On the other hand you must admit that not all ready-made meals taste really good and often they are not as healthy as fresh ones.*

*However, I must admit that I completely agree with Chris and consider the mountain road too daring to try.*

#### **USE: DEDUCTIONS AND CONCLUSIONS**

[B1] Can use 'must' to guess and deduce, most commonly with 'it must be', or 'you must be'.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Second, it must be boring for you to sit at a computer all day.*

*[talking about moving to another town] You must be so nervous.*

#### **Comments**

This is a good example of a meaning which is much more common in the native speaker corpus than in the learner corpus. This is almost certainly because of teaching sequences: ELT classes overwhelmingly teach 'must' for obligation.

[B2] Can use the perfect form of 'must' to make deductions about the past.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Of course, India must have changed a lot since Jules Verne wrote his book, but I think that its charm remains.*

*I must have looked awful because she asked me whether I was all right.*

#### **USE: EMPHASIS**

[B2] Can use the fixed expression 'I must say' to give emphasis, usually about something positive.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I must say that I'm most delighted to have you here with us, Mr. Saramago, and it's with enormous pleasure that my students will hear your words.*

*As I like music a lot I went to as many concerts as possible, and I must say that they were superb.*

#### **USE: INVITATIONS**

[B1] Can use 'must' to make invitations.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You must come and stay in our house too.  
You must come and see this restaurant!*

### USE: OBLIGATION AND NECESSITY

[B1] Can use 'must' (with a wide range of pronouns and nouns) to talk about obligation and necessity.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about something the speaker has found] She took it and said we must go and find him.  
Your parents must learn to let you live your own life ...*

[B2] Can use 'must' to ask about obligation and necessity.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Is it possible to use the prize next year or must I cancel my trip to India?  
Finally, how much money must I bring with me?*

### USE: RULES

[B2] Can use the negative forms of 'must' to talk about what is not permitted.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You must not hit them or punish them without good reason if you do not want them to become your worst enemy.  
They must not write on the walls.  
In school for example, you mustn't talk during lessons, and you have to be on time.*

### USE: SUGGESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'must' to make strong, encouraging suggestions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This club has been opened for just two weeks. I mean we must see it.  
[talking about a day out] We must do that again, don't you think?!  
Rome is really fantastic and you must go there!*

## NEED

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You needn't worry about where we can stay.  
... when I send an e-mail, I need not worry about the time.  
You needn't go out jogging in the evening because you have already had your exercise.*

### Comments

Use of 'need' as a lexical verbs appears at lower levels (see EVP), but this profile looks only at 'need' as a semi-modal. 'Needn't' and the question form are both very low frequency. There are no examples with affirmative 'need'.

### FORM: PAST, NEGATIVE

[C1] Can use 'needn't have' + '-ed'.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*You needn't have bought me anything!  
However, you needn't have bothered so much.*

#### FORM: QUESTIONS

[C2] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Need you ask?  
Lastly I would appreciate , as I am sure others would too, if the premises were cleaner. Need I say more?*

### Comments

This is very low frequency in the CLC.

#### USE: IN DISCUSSION

[C2] Can use the question form rhetorically in discussion, typically in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Need I go on?  
Need you work in this way?*

#### USE: OBLIGATION AND NECESSITY

[B2] Can use 'needn't to' talk about a lack of obligation.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I like summer so much because the weather is hot and we needn't wear a jacket.  
[talking about preparing for a party] As for the music, you needn't worry about it.*

## OUGHT

#### FORM/USE: DESIRED STATES, WITH 'THERE OUGHT TO BE'

[C1] Can use 'there ought to be' to talk about desired states of affairs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The rooms were dirty, there was no room service and there ought to be a lift since the rooms were on the 4th floor.  
... we came to the conclusion that there ought to be some changes to the club's publicity.  
I think there ought to be more excursions and guided tours.*

#### FORM/USE: EMPHASIS, WITH 'REALLY'

[C1] Can use 'ought to' with 'really' to add emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Moreover, you really ought to ask for details about the timetable they've set for schooling hours, just to be sure that its fits the with way of studying you are accustomed to.  
This is what almost everyone thinks, but we really ought to think a little bit more about it.  
One really ought to know the interests, wishes and demands of the receiver.*

#### FORM/USE: PAST, AFFIRMATIVE

[C1] Can use 'ought to have' + '-ed' to refer to desired states of affairs in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Another point, which I think ought to have been better managed, was the boat trip on the Thames.*

*However, the expert that I have consulted claims that this kind of polluted water is the most common consequence when placing gas stations and the government ought to have known that.*

*We were taken by surprise, when we didn't get a tour guide. We ought to have booked one!*

### Comments

No results for negative past form or ellipted past form (I didn't leave early but I ought to have.)

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think you ought to go on holiday with both of them.*

*Oh, I'm sorry, my mum's calling and I ought to go.*

### FORM: CONTRACTED FORM, NEGATIVE

[C2] Can use 'oughtn't' (without 'to') + verb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*...they will most certainly have a banquet that day... and you oughtn't miss it for the world!*

### Comments

VERY LOW FREQUENCY ITEM.

### FORM: ELLIPSIS

[B2] Can use 'ought to' without a following verb where the previous main verb is understood. ► ellipsis

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Otherwise some students would not get as much specialised help as they ought to.*

### Comments

This is a very low frequency form in both the learner and native speaker data.

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[C2] Can use the negative form 'ought not to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Secondly, there ought not to be a division between rich and poor.*

*We ought not to forget that in the last twenty years the food industry has increased the number of chemicals used in its products.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS, NEGATIVE

[C2] Can use 'ought' + subject + 'not to' + verb to form (rhetorical) questions, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*And if not, ought we not to learn from the mistakes of the past?*

### Comments

VERY LOW FREQUENCY ITEM. There are no examples of affirmative or tag questions in the CLC, and only one example of the question form.

#### USE: ADVICE

[B1] Can use 'ought to' with 'you' to give advice.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Then, if you'd rather go with your friend, you ought to talk to your parents first, and tell them what you think about it.*

*I think that you ought to play tennis or football at the weekend.*

#### USE: DESIRED STATES

[B2] Can use 'ought to' to talk about desired states of affairs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Furthermore, we ought to take care of our health by going on trips to not unpolluted places as often as possible.*

*Of course not all zoos are as good as they ought to be, but today we know so much about the different animals that they don't have to get bored in the zoo and we're able to provide them with the environment they prefer.*

*There shouldn't be any rubbish dumps, all the rubbish ought to be recycled.*

#### USE: LIKELIHOOD

[C1] Can use 'ought to' to talk about something which is likely.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*... the fundamental function of accounting software is to record the numerous ordinary business activities, which may improve the efficiency of the company. Besides, it ought to provide useful information in decision-making.*

*You ought not to be hungry.*

## SHALL

#### FORM: NEGATIVE

[C1] Can use the negative form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*This way, students shall not die of boredom or feel that their stay was useless.*

*Secondly, supplier contracts shall not be omitted.*

*This is, as I mentioned in my letter, only in the event I shall not be able to pick you up at the airport.*

#### Comments

There are only 2 occurrences of "shan't" in the CLC, one at B1 and one at C2. Neither are great examples so we have decided not to include them. This may be a spoken language feature.

#### USE: AFTER 'IF' CLAUSES

[C2] Can use 'shall' in the main clause after an 'if-' clause ► conditionals

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Nowadays people live longer than they did in the past, which is very nice and pleasant, but we must be careful because if things get out of hand, ... we shall be doomed to live in complete chaos.*

*I have to inform you that if we do not receive a reply this time we shall take the matter to court.*

### **USE: COMMANDS AND INSTRUCTIONS**

[C1] Can use 'shall' to express commands in very formal contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*We therefore need to insist that the agreement is binding and that the contract shall be fulfilled.*

### **Comments**

This form is very low frequency in both learner and native speaker data.

### **USE: PLANS AND INTENTIONS**

[B1] Can use 'shall' to talk about plans and intentions, particularly in formal contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I promise that I shall cover all the work and give it to you tomorrow.*

*Remember that we shall meet inside the bar.*

*I apologise for having to miss tomorrow's English class as my cousin's wedding will be taking place ... I shall be attending class the day after tomorrow.*

### **USE: PREDICTIONS**

[C2] Can use 'shall' to make predictions.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*As a result, our town shall have financial benefits, as people visiting the library will visit the city's shops for their needs.*

*... we shall probably have several years more to live.*

### **USE: SEEKING ADVICE**

[B1] Can use 'shall' to seek advice.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*What shall I buy for her wedding?*

*[a student writing to a teacher] I am really sorry but I have to travel to Argentina for health reasons. What shall I do with next week's work?*

## **SHOULD**

### **FORM/USE: AFTER 'IF' CLAUSES**

[C1] Can use 'should' after 'if' to talk about possible situations in the future.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*If you should change your mind and prefer to take a taxi, you can do it outside the airport by calling this number: 3570.*

*If something should happen, call 112, the local alarm number.*

### FORM/USE: INVERSION

[C1] Can use 'should' with an inverted subject to refer to possible situations, in formal contexts.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Should you need any further information, don't hesitate to contact us.*

*Should you withhold any important information or documentation, this could stop any payment to you.*

### FORM/USE: QUESTION TAGS

[B1] Can use the question tag form 'shouldn't' + pronoun to make suggestions and ask for opinions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*When you come back, we should rent some movies, shouldn't we?*

*I think I should write about the history of our company, shouldn't I?*

### FORM: 'SHOULD BE' + '-ING'

[B2] Can use 'should be' + '-ing'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Well, you should be bouncing up and down with joy (just kidding)!*

*These are the reasons that I believe we should be reading books instead of watching television in our free time and I believe many people believe the same thinks as I do.*

### FORM: ELLIPSIS

[B2] Can use 'should' and 'shouldn't' without a following verb where the previous main verb is understood.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Well, have you ever checked your blood pressure? I think you should.*

*John spent the rest of the day thinking about what he should do. in fact, he wanted to answer and meet her again, but he knew that he shouldn't.*

### FORM: PAST AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use 'should' have + '-ed'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You should have been with us.*

*I knew I should have written before.*

#### Comments

This structure is usually found/taught at B2 level but we have enough evidence to show it being used successfully at B1.

### FORM: PAST NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use 'should have' + '-ed'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have an appointment. I know I shouldn't have taken it during school time but I had no other choice.*

## Comments

This structure is usually found/taught at B2 level but we have enough evidence to show it being used successfully at B1, albeit with low frequency.

### USE: EXPECTATIONS

[B2] Can use 'should be' + '-ing' to talk about expectations.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*The computer systems should be working again once you restart them.*

*However, I think that the situation should be improving in the next 6 months, especially during the third quarter of the year.*

*[talking about wedding protocol] The groom should be waiting at the entrance for the bride.*

### USE: IDEAL OR DESIRED SITUATIONS

[B1] Can use 'should' to talk about ideal or desired situations.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*British people should eat more vegetables and fruit and avoid fast food!*

*I think everyone should learn to cook, you never know when you need to cook.*

### USE: LIKELIHOOD

[B1] Can use 'should' to talk about what is likely to happen.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about an event] It should be a good day!*

*...the weather is still warm, so we should be able to visit the beaches and go sightseeing in the evenings.*

### USE: NARRATIVE DEVICE

[B1] Can use 'you should have' + '-ed' to emphasise points in a story.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You should have heard the noise.*

*You should have seen my face, I was so happy.*

### USE: OBLIGATION

[B2] Can use 'should be' + '-ing' to talk about present general obligation.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Wild animals should be running free but I think that zoos today have an important role in keeping them alive.*

*Moreover if a car driver has drunk too many alcoholic drinks or is tired he shouldn't be driving.*

### USE: REGRET

[B1] Can use 'should have' + '-ed' to talk about regrets or undesirable situations in the past.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You should have been there with me, I had a great time.*

*I opened the envelope and read the letter. He had written that he was sorry and that he should not have done it.*

## USE: THANKING

[B1] Can use 'you shouldn't have' (+ '-ed') in polite acceptance of a gift.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Thank you for the present you sent me, you shouldn't have!*

*Thank you for the money, you shouldn't have sent it.*

## USED TO

### FORM/USE: WITH 'AS' + PRONOUN, NARRATIVE

[C2] Can use 'as' + pronoun + 'used to' ... to add background to a narrative, often to highlight something unusual.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She had gone out for a walk in the woods as she used to do every Sunday, with her diary in her hand and a pen in her pocket.*

*He divorced his wife, old flabby Nellie as she used to call her, and proposed to her.*

*She married a well-off man, and ended up being a housewife, doing piecework for peanuts, as she used to say.*

### FORM: 'USED NOT TO'

[C2] Can use negative form 'used not to'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I used to play until late in the evening, I used not to do my homework and I did not excel at school.*

*As a teenager I used not to be very sociable, I had few friends and none of them felt close.*

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I used to share my room with my brother.*

*When I was a little girl, we used to be together all the time.*

### FORM: ELLIPSIS

[B2] Can use 'used to' without a following verb where the previous main verb is understood. ► ellipsis

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She doesn't travel as much as she used to.*

*I must admit that they did sound quite a lot better than they used to.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative forms 'didn't use to' and 'didn't used to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We didn't use to talk to each other.*

*But this year I've met lots of new people that I didn't used to talk to, like Monica and Nina.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[C1] Can use the question form.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*[talking about a change in eating habits] What did we use to eat?*

### **Comments**

Questions form generally are low frequency in the CLC as they are more common in spoken language than written.

### **USE: NO LONGER TRUE**

[B1] Can use 'used to' to talk about repeated actions or states in the past that are no longer true.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*When I was I child, I used to go to a small school and I enjoyed it very much.*

*...and she used to come to my house and play computer games with me.*

*I didn't use to laugh much but since the day we met, I'm always happy.*

## **WILL**

### **USE: FIXED PLANS**

[B1] Can use 'will' to talk about fixed plans in the future, often with timetabled times or dates.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Mr Miller, the Sales Director, will visit us next Thursday.*

*I'm sorry, but I won't be able to attend your class tomorrow ....*

### **USE: HABITUAL AND TYPICAL**

[C1] Can use 'will' to talk about something which is typical or habitual.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The abundance of ingredients required in any recipe will result normally in a spicy but nutritious dish, a dish that will usually contain some kind of sauce made of hot pepper, tomatoes, garlic and onion, some kind of meat and also some vegetables.*

*She will often knock on the door to see you.*

*Go to lots of beautiful places that you won't usually be able to go to with a car, such as riversides.*

### **USE: PREDICTIONS**

[B1] Can use 'will' to make predictions.► question tags

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I think that in 20 years' time it will be bigger than it is, because my town is growing very fast.*

*All your life, you'll be able to look at your parents, but as soon as you finish your school, it'll be harder to meet your old friends.*

*But you're right, without much sport practice you'll soon put on weight, won't you?*

### **USE: REQUESTS**

[B2] Can use 'will' (particularly 'Will you please') to make requests and commands in a wide range of contexts.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*Will you please send me his name, address and telephone number.*

*Will you please inform me about the exact payment.*

*Will you pay attention!*

### Comments

Note that for Business English candidates this use first appears at B1.

### USE: WILLFULNESS OR DISAPPROVAL

[C2] Can use 'will' to talk about general behaviour, often disapprovingly.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Indeed no one can imagine what children will do!*

### Comments

Note that this use is very low frequency, perhaps because of the lack of spoken data. The 'will' here is typically stressed, e.g. "She 'will' slam that door!" (unstressed 'will' would not work here).

## WOULD

### FORM/USE: AFTER 'IF' CLAUSES

[B1] Can use 'would' in the main clause of a conditional sentence to talk about an imagined situation, often in the context of advice or opinion-giving.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's your decision but if I had the chance, I would go with my friends.*

*If you decided to go to the country school, you'd probably have more attention as a student.*

*If I were you, I would not watch TV all the time.*

*If I were able to move, I wouldn't move because I think this street is perfect.*

### FORM: PAST AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use 'would have' + '-ed'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I did not think my friend Janis would have done that.*

*That answer would have changed my life.*

### FORM: PAST NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use 'would not have' + '-ed' or 'wouldn't have' + '-ed'

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Without your help, I wouldn't have got this result.*

*Had it not been for that day, she would not have met George.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use question forms.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Would you let me know what you think?*

*Would you please do me a favour? Could you go and collect the clothes for me?*

*Think of the fun you will have with your friends, the whole day hanging around, playing sports, eating ice cream. Wouldn't that be wonderful?*

*I think it would be fantastic, wouldn't it?*

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use an limited range of adverbs with 'would', including 'really', 'probably', 'certainly', 'definitely'. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I hope you will come soon, and I think that you would really enjoy it because is something different of what you are used to.*

*More over in my opinion it would probably be the best idea to choose the biggest school ...*

*I would definitely choose to live by the sea side!*

[C1] Can use an increasing range of adverbs with 'would', including 'strongly', 'easily', 'especially', 'actually', 'absolutely', 'gladly' ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Considering the aspects of our education system, and the results of my research, I would strongly recommend the following changes to be made.*

*Because of her wide and excellent experience with small children I believe that Nascha would easily fit into a family with small children.*

[C2] Can use a wide range of adverbs with 'would', including 'undoubtedly', 'possibly', 'normally', 'personally', 'eventually', 'obviously', 'significantly', 'inevitably'. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about the construction of a leisure centre] I believe that the construction of such a centre would undoubtedly contribute to the improvement of our quality of life.*

*Organising family-oriented activities would significantly increase membership and raise the society's popularity with the local community.*

### USE: FUTURE IN THE PAST

[B1] Can use 'would' to talk about the future in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've just bought a new dress, and a beautiful black T-shirt. When I saw them, I thought they would be great for tonight's party.*

*... we thought that the film would be horrible because of the title but when the film started, the story was beautiful and Mauricio and I liked it a lot.*

*And she asked me if I would play the game with her against her cousin and her friend on Saturday.*

### USE: HABITUAL PAST

[B2] Can use 'would' to talk about habitual actions and events in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a job that the speaker did last year] In my opinion I worked very hard. I would spend a lot of hours at work.*

*[from a story about pirates] At night they would go to the rocky seaside and light a fire in order to deceive the boats and let them crash on the rocks.*

### USE: IMAGINED SITUATIONS IN THE PAST

[B1] Can use 'would' to talk about imagined situations in the past. ► conditionals

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The next week I would have flown to Miami to meet George Clooney.*

*If I were in your shoes I would have chosen the school which is in the centre of town...*

*If you hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have known how to do that homework project.*

*If I had gone with uncomfortable shoes, I wouldn't have danced all the time.*

### USE: INDIRECTNESS

[B1] Can use 'would' with verbs such as 'advise', 'imagine', 'recommend', 'say' to be less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'd advise you to go with your friends because I bet you'll have so much fun!*

*If you want my opinion, I'd recommend the countryside because I think that the city in my country is very noisy.*

*Finally, I'd say that you should talk with your parents and your friends to decide.*

*If you have decided to move, I would say that it is better for you to choose the large school in the centre of the town.*

### USE: POLITE REQUESTS

[B1] Can use 'would' to make polite requests, often in the fixed expression 'would you mind'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Would you tell me about your room in your next letter, please?*

*Would it be possible for you to meet me later that day, around 7?*

*I had forgotten I have an appointment with my dentist at that time, so, would you mind if we met at 5 o'clock instead of meeting at 4 o'clock?*

*We are supposed to have a barbecue for lunch, would you mind bringing a salad?*

### USE: REPORTED SPEECH

[B1] Can use 'would' as the past form of 'will' in reported clauses.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She accepted the invitation and she said that she would come on the 21st of June.*

*I felt better when he said that he would be in Fenerbahce.*

*He told me I would like it and he was right!*

### USE: WILLINGNESS IN THE PAST

[B1] Can use the negative forms of 'would' to talk about willingness in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We had to leave without you because the bus driver wouldn't wait.*

*[talking about a guitar] It was all that I wanted in life but my parents would not allow me to buy it.*

# NEGATION

## NEGATION

### FORM/USE: 'DON'T YOU ?', WARNING

[C2] Can use a negative imperative form with 'you' to give a warning or reprimand.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Don't you ever do that again!*

*Don't you dare!*

*Don't you dare forget me, I want letters from you promptly, understand!*

#### Comments

This is a very low frequency form in the CLC.

### FORM/USE: 'IN THE LEAST', EMPHASIS

[C2] Can use 'in the least' after a negative form for emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*She has lost her little brother but that does not discourage her in the least.*

*Most of the times, the director of a television channel is not in the least interested in the quality, but only in the matter of how many people watch their programmes.*

*What others say doesn't matter in the least.*

### FORM/USE: 'NEITHER ? NOR'

[B2] Can use 'neither ? nor' to connect two words, phrases or clauses, often to give emphasis or focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Neither you nor I would like that.*

*We can neither eat nor drink during the lessons.*

*I have neither climbed nor surfed before, so that would be very exciting for me.*

### FORM/USE: 'NEITHER'

[C2] Can use 'Neither' or 'Nor' + with 'do' or 'be' + inverted subject to add to a previous related negative clause, to focus on an additional negative factor.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*There are also considerable disturbances during day-time. It is, for example, not possible to lead a conversation, e.g. on the veranda, without shouting. Nor is it possible to watch television peacefully without the thunderous noise in the background.*

*At first, I didn't pay attention to the large number of magazines and newspapers she subscribed to. Neither did I oppose her 'need' to get new clothes every month.*

#### Comments

This is a very low frequency form in the CLC.

### FORM/USE: 'NEVER', INVERTED FRONT POSITION, FOCUS

[B2] Can use 'never' in front position followed by an inverted subject (most commonly 'I') + main verb, to give focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Never have I seen such a realistic and impressive film before.*

*Never had I thought that my parents would do this to me.*

### FORM/USE: 'NOT A' + NOUN, EMPHASIS

[C2] Can use 'not a' + noun, often with a following passive structure, for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not a single noise could be heard from inside of any of the rooms.*

*Not a long time passes before another Polish city, Warsaw, hosts a festival.*

*Not a single member of the group would have imagined that the "Luxury coach" would break down and leave them stranded in the middle of nowhere.*

### FORM/USE: 'NOT ONLY ? (BUT) ALSO' WITH INVERSION

[C1] Can use auxiliary 'do' + inverted subject after 'not only', to give focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not only was it in a wonderful location, with extraordinary views, but it was also very accessible and the shops were really near.*

*Not only do they have the biggest turnover overall, they also managed to increase it constantly from 2000 to 2002.*

### FORM/USE: 'NOT' + STANCE ADVERB, HEDGING

[C1] Can use 'not' + stance adverb, often in a mid position, to soften the directness of a statement.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This is not necessarily the way the older generation would see it, though.*

*Being a passionate student of the English language, you do not necessarily need a teacher to guide you through the meanders of English.*

*I'm not sure what exactly they would expect us to do at the campsite, but organising the entertainment is not really my thing.*

*Personally, I do not actually think that this relationship will change.*

### Comments

In the majority of cases, 'not necessarily' is used.

### FORM/USE: 'NOT', EMPHASIS

[B2] Can use uncontracted 'not' for emphasis or in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Do not take on too many assignments at a time.*

*I cannot agree with you Mr Brown.*

*Keeping them in zoos will not help them.*

### FORM/USE: 'WHATSOEVER', EMPHASIS

[C1] Can use 'whatsoever' after a negative form for emphasis.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*This means that nothing shall change for the employees, there shall be no implication whatsoever for their rights stipulated in their employment contracts.*

*Organising the entertainment would be rather fun, whilst waiting tables would be boring and we have no experience whatsoever.*

### **FORM: 'NEITHER OF', 'NONE OF' + PRONOUN**

[B2] Can use negative forms 'neither of' and 'none of' + pronoun or noun phrase with the affirmative form of the verb.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Neither of us is liable in this case.*

*Moreover, none of my friends are interested therefore there is no one I can talk to.*

*We even met a French group and as none of them spoke English, we stayed with them to translate what they were asked.*

### **FORM: 'NONE', SUBSTITUTION**

[C1] Can use negative pronoun 'none' to substitute for subject and object pronouns or noun phrases. ► pronouns: substitution

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*In fact, there are none, but the hills that do exist can be dubbed mountains – just because there are none...*

*Concerning your question about any special requirements of some students – I am glad that I am able to tell you that there are none this year.*

*Problems when using English? None.*

### **FORM: 'NOT ALL', 'NOT EVERY'**

[C1] Can use 'not with indefinite pronouns 'everyone' and 'everything' and determiners 'every', 'all'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Not everyone likes sports or music.*

*Not everything was as good as we expected.*

*Not all students, though, can attend the centre as it is not always open, and their lessons finish at 5 pm, the closing time of the centre.*

*Not all of us have got the fighting spirit to visit the gym regularly, but many of us would like to have a healthy look.*

*Not every cyclist is a danger to the public as most of them obey all rules and respect other road users.*

### **FORM: 'NOT', NON-FINITE AND ELLIPTED CLAUSES**

[B1] Can use 'not' before a non-finite or ellipted clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But every time a small envelope arrived, I ripped it open as fast as I could. Not this time.*

*I would like to apologise for not being able to attend on Friday 13th June for my visit.*

*The picnic will be held in the park three kilometres away from the city center so it will be quiet and not crowded.*

*Well, I think it will be better for you to go to a large school in the centre of the town and not to the small school.*

### FORM: ADVERBS

[B1] Can use adverbs 'ever', 'never', 'yet', 'still' in negative contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Nobody will ever know who that man was.*

*I stayed there for two weeks and it never rained.*

*I haven't decided yet.*

*But I still don't believe her.*

### FORM: AUXILIARY VERBS 'BE', 'HAVE', PAST

[B1] Can form negative statements of main verbs in the past continuous and past perfect with auxiliary verbs 'be' and 'have' + 'not/n't'. ► past continuous ► past perfect

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was raining for seventy two hours and it wasn't going to stop.*

*I hadn't expected to receive a letter from her.*

### FORM: MENTAL PROCESS VERBS + CLAUSE

[B1] Can use the negative forms of mental process verbs ('I don't think', 'I don't believe') followed by a complement clause, where the negative form is in the mental process verb rather than the complement clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*But I don't think it'll help you.*

*I don't think I'll live here forever because I intend to move to Curitiba, a southern city of my country.*

*I don't believe that the suitcase will be returned to me.*

### Comments

This is as opposed to 'I think it won't help' or 'I think I won't live here forever?' or 'I believe that the suitcase won't be returned to me'.

### FORM: PRONOUNS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of indefinite pronouns in negative contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I said I had nothing, but he didn't believe me.*

*I haven't seen anything yet.*

*I didn't tell anyone about this story at first.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use negative question forms in main clauses and question tags. ► questions

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Can't you go with your parents some time and with your friends later?*

*Don't you think it's fun?*

*Aren't you excited about it?*

*You're free on Saturday, aren't you?*

*I think it would be fantastic, wouldn't it?*

### USE: FORMAL

[C1] Can use '(very) few' meaning 'not many' to refer to people in formal written contexts, often reports or surveys.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They were sent to Britain to improve their English but few had any real contact with the language.*

*English is the most spoken language nowadays and although most of the people can speak a bit of English, very few speak it in the right way.*

*The Greeks have always been a tortured folk; everyone tried to conquer them, but few managed.*

### USE: SEEKING AGREEMENT

[B1] Can use negative questions and question tags to involve the listener/reader by seeking agreement or checking something.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Isn't it marvellous?*

*Don't you think it's fantastic?*

*You love books, don't you?*

## NOUNS

### NOUN PHRASES

#### FORM/USE: 'SUCH (A)' + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

[B1] Can form noun phrases with 'such a' + adjective + singular noun and 'such' + adjective + plural noun, to give emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was so terrible because I've never been in such a terrible situation.*

*So it was really funny to hear from her after such a long time.*

*Thank you for giving me such a fantastic birthday present.*

*Also, we both liked to read and that was why we were such good friends.*

*I had never worn such high heels before.*



### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It was so terrible because I've never been in such a terrible situation.*

*So it was really funny to hear from her after such a long time.*

*Thank you for giving me such a fantastic birthday present.*

*Also, we both liked to read and that was why we were such good friends.*

*I had never worn such high heels before.*

### FORM/USE: 'THE THING ...'

[B1] Can use the noun phrase 'The thing' in front position, with a clause complement, to give focus to something.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The thing I enjoyed most about it was a new computer game.*

*The thing I prefer there is the swimming-pool, because I have met someone there.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The thing I enjoyed most about the it, was a new computer game.*

*The thing I prefer there is the swimming-pool, because I have met someone there.*

### FORM/USE: 'WH-' CLEFT, FOCUS

[C1] Can form complex noun phrases with 'wh-' cleft clauses, followed by 'be', to give focus.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What everyone loved were the special effects and we were very impressed by the use of advanced technological innovations.*

*What companies care about is money and football players help them to earn it.*

*What tourists want is to see the most typical things in England, not a hamburger restaurant.*

*What students learn are mostly facts and theories.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*What everyone loved were the special effects and we were very impressed by the use of advanced technological innovations.*

*What companies care about is money and football players help them to earn it.*

*What tourists want is to see the most typical things in England, not a hamburger restaurant or a London's musical in the back row in gallery.*

*What students learn are mostly full of facts and theories.*

### FORM/USE: NOUN PHRASES WITH SUPERLATIVES

[B1] Can use a clause with a present perfect or past perfect as a superlative noun phrase complement, to talk about uniqueness.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It has the best promenade I have seen.*

*The best book I've read is "The Da Vinci code".*

*It was the best decision you had ever made.*

*We enjoy going shopping, walking and talking hour after hour – She's the funniest person I've ever known!*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It has the best promenade I have seen.*

*The best book I've read is "The Da Vinci's code".*

*It was the best decision you had ever made.*

*We enjoy going shopping, walking and talking hour after hour – She's the funniest person I've ever known!*

*In the practise match I played against the greatest goalkeeper which I've ever seen.*

### FORM/USE: POSSESSIVE 'S' WITHOUT NOUN

[B1] Can omit the noun after possessive 's' to talk about a place which is familiar to the speaker and listener.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Last week I left my clothes at the dry cleaner's and I can't collect them.*

*I have to go to the dentist's.*

*I'll be picking you up at eight o'clock near the McDonald's, OK?*

*I'm going to be absent from the English class next week, because I am going to the doctor's.*

*It's next to your grandma's.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In last week I left my clothes at the dry cleaner's and I can't collect them.*

*I have to go to the dentist's.*

*I'll be picking you at eight o'clock near the McDonald's, OK?*

*I'm going to be absent from the English class next week, because I am going to the doctor's.*

*It's next to your grandma's.*

### Comments

This is a feature more associated with spoken language to talk about places which are familiar to the speaker and the listener. Therefore, their frequency is not very high in written data and it is something to check further in spoken learner data.

### FORM: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASE WITH POSSESSIVE 'S' + NOUN

[B1] Can form complex noun phrases with noun phrase + 'of' + noun phrase + possessive determiner 's' + noun phrase.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I ran to the street and I saw the window of my neighbour's car was broken.*

*The subject of my boss's talk will be IT skills.*

*My friend Ronald had been chosen to play the role of James Bond's son!*

*My best friend is called Sindi and we met at my brother's birthday. She is the sister of my brother's girlfriend so he invited her as well.*

*The delivery date should be the day of my friend's birthday.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I ran to the street and I saw the window of my neighbour's car was broken.*

*The subject of my boss's talk will be about IT skills.*

*My friend Ronald had been chosen to play the role of James Bond's son!*

*My best friend is called Sindi and we met at my brother's birthday. She is the sister of my brother's girlfriend so he invited her as well.*

*The delivery date should be the day of my friend's birthday.*

**FORM: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES WITH 'LITTLE OR NO' + NOUN**

[C2] Can form complex noun phrases with 'little or no' + noun.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Harvey Keitel has always chosen the scripts that interested him as a person and as an actor, whilst refusing to invest his talent in big-time Hollywood block-busters with little or no artistic value.*

*They have little or no spare time to relax and recharge their batteries; they are constantly under pressure in order to live up to the expectations of the team and the supporters.*

*The careers of these people started at a very young age with little or no money.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*That is the reason why I appreciate someone like the actor Harvey Keitel, who in the course of his career has always been coherent enough to choose the scripts that interested him as a person and as an actor, whilst refusing to invest his talent in big-time Hollywood block-busters with little or no artistic value.*

*They have little or no spare time to relax and recharge their batteries; they are constantly under pressure in order to live up to the expectations of the team and the supporters.*

*These careers started at a very young age with little or no money.*

*As the highway is merely 300 metres from the centre, transportation of products is carried out with little or no problems.*

**FORM: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES WITH ADJECTIVES**

[B1] Can form an increasing range of complex noun phrases with more than one adjective.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The Northeast is so beautiful and it's famous because of its white sandy beaches and the coconut trees.*

*Last weekend I went to São Paulo to buy some winter clothes. I bought a white hooded jacket, a blue jumper, black gloves and a beautiful blue scarf.*

*Inside there were three samples of a nasty purple liquid.*

*I know your company are offering an exciting new service in our area.*

*He had beautiful green eyes, short, curly, red hair and he was wearing an elegant black suit with a red tie.*

*You can walk along the streets and eat typical Spanish food in good restaurants.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*The Northeast is so beautiful and it's famous because of its white sandy beaches and the coconut trees.*

*Last weekend I went to São Paulo to buy some winter clothes, I bought a white hooded jacket , a blue jumper, black gloves and a beautiful blue scarf.*

*Inside there were three samples of a nasty purple liquid.*

*I know your company are offering an exciting new service in our area.*

*He had beautiful green eyes, short, curly, red hair and he was wearing an elegant black suit with a red tie.*

*You can walk along the streets, and eat typical spanish food in good restaurants.*

**FORM: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES WITH ADJECTIVES COMBINED WITH 'BUT'**

[B2] Can form an increasing range of complex noun phrases with more than one adjective combined with 'but'.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I am very lucky, because I was born in a small but beautiful city called Neuva Helvecia.*

*As a result, in order to find out which is the most important, you need to ask yourself a simple but tricky question that no man would like to be asked.*

*The smoke in the air had a strong but good smell.*

*I will be on business in London to sign a contract with a new but significant customer at that time.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I am very luckily, because I was born in a small , but beautiful city called Neuva Helvecia.*

*As a result, inorder to find out which is the most important you need to ask yourself a simple but tricky question that no man would like to be asked.*

*The smoke in the air had a strong but good smell.*

*Dear Erica I am sorry that I can not attend the meeting at the head office since I will be on business in London to sign a contract with a new but significant customer at that time.*

**FORM: COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES WITH ADVERBS + ADJECTIVES**

[B1] Can form complex noun phrases with adverb + adjective + noun.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*It took us a very long time but it was a great fun!*

*They made really good friends.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*It took us a very long time but it was a great fun!*

*They made really good friends.*

**FORM: FRIEND + 'OF' + POSSESSIVE DETERMINER + NOUN**

[B1] Can form noun phrases with 'a friend of' or 'friends of' + possessive determiner + noun.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*He is a friend of my husband.*

*I just thought they were friends of my neighbour who were going to visit him.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*He is a friend of my husband.*

*I just thought they were friends of my neighbour who were going to visit him.*

**FORM: INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

[B1] Can form noun phrases with an indefinite pronoun + adjective or clause.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*We see each other every day and do something different every day.*

*You could bring something to drink.*

*But then there is nothing special to eat.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You could bring something to drink.*

*But then there is nothing special to eat.*

*We see each other everyday and do something different everyday.*

### FORM: NOUN + 'OF' + POSSESSIVE DETERMINER + NOUN

[B2] Can form noun phrases with noun + 'of' + possessive determiner + noun + 's', particularly with 'friend' or 'friends'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Actually, I know a great one and they can make a little discount for us because the owner is a friend of my father's.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Actually, I know a great one and they can make a little discount for us because the owner is a friend of my father's.*

### Comments

This is more typical in spoken language. There is only one example in the CLC of this at B2 level and one at C2 level.

### FORM: NOUN + 'OF' + POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

[B1] Can form noun phrases with noun + 'of' + possessive pronouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*... we always did everything together and couldn't stop laughing as she told me many funny stories and I told her lots of silly mistakes of mine.*

*A colleague of mine has told me about a Swiss hotel in London.*

*I was looking for something special to do for my last week off and some schoolmates of mine invited me to join the cycling holiday.*

*I'm a fan of his, he is my favorite singer.*

*I want this dream of mine to come true.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*... we always did everything together and couldn't stop laughing as she told me many funny stories and I told her lots of silly mistakes of mine.*

*A colleague of mine has told me about a Swiss hotel in London.*

*I was looking for something special to do for my last week off and some schoolmates of mine invited me to join the cycling holiday.*

*I'm very happy to receive another letter of yours.*

*I want this dream of mine to come true.*

### Comments

There are many instances at A2 but almost all are limited to 'friends of mine'.

### FORM: NOUN + PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

[B1] Can form complex noun phrases by using a prepositional phrase after the main noun in a noun phrase.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was a beautiful red dress with blue flowers on the back.*

*Yesterday a TV company came to our school to make a film about Bavarian pupils.*

*I don't spend too much time in front of the television, I just watch it twice a week and on Sundays morning.*

*I received your letter and you asked me about the future of my town.*

*I have to travel to Montevideo to see my doctor because I'm having some problems with my health.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It was a beautiful red dress with blue flowers on the back.*

*Yesterday a TV company came to our school to make a film about Bavarian pupils.*

*I don't spend too much time in front of the television, I just watch it twice a week and on Sundays morning.*

*I received your letter and you asked me about the future of my town.*

*I have to travel to Montevideo to see my doctor because I'm having some problems with my health.*

### Comments

At this level there are examples both of complements and post-modifiers.

### FORM: NOUN PHRASE WITH POSSESSIVE 'S WITHOUT NOUN

[C1] Can form complex noun phrases with noun phrase + 'of' + noun phrase + possessive determiner 's', omitting the noun where it is previously mentioned.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Our after-sales team now is perceived as faster, more qualified, friendlier and more efficient than our competitors'.*

*You cannot have peace and quiet in your own home, as your hour of peacefulness might considerably differ from your neighbours'.*

*I think it would be better to include a student's view of the college, not only a teacher's.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Our after-sales team now is perceived as faster, more qualified, friendlier and more efficient than our competitors'.*

*You cannot have peace and quiet in your own home, as your hour of peacefulness might considerably differ from your neighbours'.*

*I think it would be better to include a student's view of the college, not only a teacher's.*

### Comments

Note that at B1, learners can use this structure deictically to refer to a place which is mutually understood ('I went to the doctor's'), whereas this can-do is about reference to something previously mentioned rather than something understood.

### FORM: NOUN PHRASE, NOUN PHRASE

[B1] Can put two noun phrases together (in apposition) to refer to the same person or thing, usually separated by commas.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Mr Miller, the Sales Director, will visit us next Thursday.*

*Yesterday my boyfriend and I decided to go on a cycling holiday to visit some places in the country near Eboli, the town where we live.*

*She has come with me and two more friends, Peter and Gorha.*

*I spoke with her and she looks really happy, although a little sad because her best friend, Alison, did not pass the exam.*

*A new employee, Mary Watts, has just joined our company.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Mr Miller, the Sales Director, will visit us next Thursday.*

*Yesterday my boy-friend and I decided to go on a cycling holiday to visit some places of the country near Eboli, the town where we live.*

*She has come with me and two more friends, Peter and Gorha.*

*I spoke with her and she looks really happy, althought a little sad because her best friend, Alison, did not pass the exam.*

*A new employee, Mary Watts has just joined our company.*

### FORM: POSSESSION WITH PLURAL NOUNS + '

[B2] Can form noun phrases with plural nouns + ' + noun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He had promised that he would go to his grandparents' house this afternoon.*

*Our company is a digital company with 15 years' experience.*

*It is essential to introduce special offers to get customers' attention.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*He had promised that he would go to his grandparents' house this afternoon.*

*Our company is a digital company with 15 years' experience.*

*It is essential to introduce special offers to get customers' attention.*

### FORM: POSTMODIFYING WITH ADJECTIVE PHRASE

[B2] Can form complex noun phrases by using adjective phrases as postmodifiers to give more information about the noun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Besides, we could leave one day in the morning and go by boat to a small and exotic island full of different and exotic species of birds that we could observe and photograph.*

*Emily Brönte succeeded in writing a romantic, psychological and tragic story, beautifully set in these mysterious moors.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Besides we could leave one day in the morning and reach by boat to a small and exotic island full of different and exotic species of birds that we could observe and photograph.*

*Emily Brönte succeeded in writing a romantic, psychological and tragic[al] story, beautifully set in these mysterious moors .*

### USE: NOMINALISATION, FORMALITY

[C1] Can use nominalised forms in academic or business contexts, to make something more formal.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As indicated by the charts, the output in state-owned industry increased by 12% in 2000. With reference to foreign-invested industry, it recorded fluctuations in industrial output increases throughout three years.*

*It stood at 14% in 2002, then dropped by 2% in 2001. 2002 brought a significant growth in the output and recorded 19%.*

*We could say that things have been altered by the advances of science and culture in general, like the rest of the world.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As indicated by the charts, the output in state-owned industry increased by 12% in 2000. With reference to foreign-invested industry, it recorded fluctuations in industrial output increases throughout three years.*

*It stood at 14% in 2002, then dropped by 2% in 2001. 2002 brought a significant growth in the output and recorded 19%.*

*We could say that things have been altered by the advances of science and culture in general, like the rest of the world.*

### Comments

This type of nominalised form is typical in formal contexts in CIC.

## PLURAL

### FORM: COLLECTIVE NOUNS

[B1] Can use collective nouns, usually with a singular verb, but also with a plural verb depending on whether the noun is perceived as a single group or collection of individuals.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The staff is friendly and polite with guests and there are many sports activities.*

*After the spring break the whole staff have to start work at 7.15 am.*

*A TV company has decided to make a film in my high school because it's a normal secondary school.*

*The crew were very interested in what the new school looked like and they were amazed at the colours we used to paint it.*

*Our company is interested in your company's services.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The staff is friendly and polite with guests and there are many sport-activities.*

*After the spring break the whole staff have to start the work at 7.15 am.*

*A TV company has decided to make a film in my highschool because it's a normal secondary school.*

*The crew were very interesting in how the new school looked like and they were amazed about the colours we used to paint it.*

*Our company is interested in your company's services.*

### Comments

There is evidence of collective nouns at A2 especially 'team' and to a lesser degree 'company'. The majority of the 600+ uses of 'team' were in response to one KET exam question (Q9) in 2007.



## TYPES

### FORM'-ING' FORMS, ABSTRACT NOUNS

[C1] Can use the '-ing' form of verbs as abstract nouns.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Learning English has its rewards too.*

*Advertising seems to be very important to promote a new product.*

*Teaching is terribly challenging and demanding.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Learning English has its rewards too.*

*Advertising seems to be very important to promote a new product.*

*Teaching is terribly challenging and demanding.*

### FORM'-ING' FORMS, SUBJECT

[B2] Can use the '-ing' form of verbs as nouns in subject position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Working until midnight every evening is not reasonable. Working late is not the solution and it is even dangerous.*

*Also, think about stress. Driving in a city is stressful.*

*First of all, Wicklow Mountains Centre is the perfect place for climbing. Climbing is our favourite hobby and, I think, we will have a good time.*

*Many people say that they just don't have time for thinking about their health. Living in today's world demands spending a lot of time working.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Working until midnight every evening is not reasonable . Working late is not the solution and it is even dangerous.*

*Also, think about stress . Driving in a city is stressful.*

*First of all, Wicklow Mountains Centre is the perfect place for climbing . Climbing is our favourite hobby and, I think, we will have a good time.*

*Many people say that they just don' have time for thinking about their health. Living in today's world demands spending a lot of time on working.*

### FORM: COMMON NOUNS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of common nouns.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*When you're swimming you exercise all of your body.*

*You just have to send me your design and I'll do the rest.*

*My heart was hurt and nobody will repair the damage.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*When you're swimming you exercise all your body.*

*You just have to send me your design and I'll do the rest.*

*My heart was hurt and nobody will repair the damage.*

#### Comments

Noun development is related to vocabulary development cf. The English Vocabulary Profile.

## UNCOUNTABLE

### FORM: NO ARTICLE

[B2] Can use uncountable nouns without a definite article to refer to an abstract thing in general.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Television is more attractive because it has moving images.*

*Music was her life, not only a hobby.*

*Look at it this way, the more you work in school, the more you will achieve in your job.*

*Education is important to prevent you from being a dog on a leash!*

*Language can be learned slowly and reflects the culture and tradition of the country. Language even plays an important role in the tourist industry.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Television is more attractive because it has moving images.*

*Music was her life, not only a hobby.*

*Look at it this way, the more you work in school the more you will achieve in your job.*

*Education is important to prevent you from being a dog on a leash!*

*Language can be learned slowly and reflects the culture and tradition of the country .*

*Language even plays an important role in tourist industry.*

#### Comments

Note the abstract use here compared to the type of examples you find at A2, e.g. 'The music is going to be loud' – which refers to a specific concrete instance. Common errors with uncountables persist at B2 and increase with lexical growth, e.g. 'informations', 'advices', 'equipments', 'transports', 'knowledges', 'works', 'spendings', 'trainings', 'homeworks', 'researches', 'furnitures', 'behaviours', 'damages'. Learner example: 'Please send me all the informations and the application.'

### FORM: UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of uncountable nouns.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think the countryside is better than the town centre, people get on more easily with each other.*

*Well, I love shopping for clothes because I love fashion.*

*I hope you can help me to find new accommodation as soon as is possible.*

*Firstly, you can admire lovely architecture and visit a museum about our history.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I think the countryside is better than the town centre, people get on easier with each other.*

*Well, I love shopping for clothes because I love fashion.*

*I hope you can help me to find new accommodation as soon as is possible.*

*Firstly, you can admire lovely architecture and visit museum about our history.*

### Comments

Errors persist with the most common items, e.g. 'informations', 'equipments', 'homeworks', 'advices', 'furnitures', 'countrysides', 'works', 'softwares', 'trainings'. Learner examples: (1) 'I'm looking forward to hearing from you if you require further informations.' (2) '250 of them are very young and they need a lot of trainings.'

[C1] Can use a wide range of uncountable nouns, particularly referring to abstract concepts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I appreciate that your company is concerned about safety and has installed safety belts in every coach but they do not help much when they are all broken.*

*Above all, the administration is not very efficient.*

*He will go with another two members in his department who are likely to be the core workforce and who are eager to broaden their vision.*

*Through that we can develop more humanity, solidarity, tolerance and respect among people of different countries.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I appreciate that your company is concerned about safety and has installed safety belts in every coach but they do not help much when they all are broken.*

*Above all, the administration is not very efficient:*

*He will go with another two members in his department who are likely to be core workforce and who are eager to broaden their vision.*

*Through that we can develop more humanity, solidarity, tolerance and respect among the people of the different countries.*

### Comments

Errors increase with the most common items and with determiners, e.g. 'informations', 'transports', 'trainings', 'equipments', 'advices', 'knowledges', 'softwares', 'researches', 'furnitures', 'tuitions', 'spendings', 'accommodations', 'feedbacks', 'congestions'. Learner examples (1) 'I have knowledges of foreign languages such as English (written and spoken fluently), little knowledges of French.' (2) 'The three computers were acquired in order to replace the out-of-date equipments that were used by the General Manager.' At C2 errors decrease generally but persist with the most common items. Learner example: 'Reading these books is very interesting, as many advices are hidden inside.'

### FORM: WITH DETERMINERS, QUANTITY

[B1] Can use uncountable nouns with an increasing range of quantity words and phrases including 'much', 'a bit of', 'a little bit of', 'enough', 'further', 'plenty of', 'loads of'. ►

Determiners: quantity

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm sure that your parents are looking forward to going with you to the beach, because they work a lot of hours during the year so they can't spend much time with you.*

*I know you have sent me somebody to fix it but every time that it rains, at least a bit of water comes inside the house.*

*I hope this little bit of advice can help you!*

*I prefer to buy only what I need because I don't have enough money.*

*So I would like you to attend a meeting next week for further information.*

*My Finance department is very busy, I have loads of work to finish.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I'm sure that your parents are looking forward to going with you to the beach, because they work a lot of hours during the year so they can't spend much time with you.*

*I know you have sent me somebody to fix it but every time that it rains at least a bit of water comes inside the house.*

*I ... hope this little bit of advice can help you!*

*I prefer to buy only what I need because I don't have enough money.*

*So I would like you to attend a meeting next week for further information.*

*My Finance department is very busy I have loads of work to finish.*

## PASSIVES

### GET AND HAVE

#### FORM/USE: 'GET' + OBJECT + '-ED'

[C1] Can use 'get' + object + '-ed' to talk about causing or instructing something to happen or to be done by somebody else, often informally.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I must say that Caroline and I are good together because I think I am a little bit lazy but she is always the one who tries to get things done.*

*[talking about a minibus] ? ours broke down and it took hours to get it repaired.*

*But within the last two months we received several complaints from our customers about not getting their orders delivered in time.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I must say that Caroline and I are good together because I think I am a little bit laisy but she is always the one who tries to get things done.*

*[talking about a minibus] ? ours broke down and it took hours to get it repaired.*

*But within the last two months we received several complaints from our customers about not getting their orders delivered in time.*

#### FORM/USE: 'GET' + OBJECT + '-ING'

[C1] Can use 'get' + object + '-ing' to talk about causing someone or something to do something.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*First of all, I would like to underline the sheer boredom of these CDs, which got me yawning from the very first minute.*

*I was very happy when I received your letter, although I must say that your dilemma got me thinking.*

*As soon as they realized there was no way to get the employees moving, they got excited and nervous.*

*But still both concerts were great as Elton John and "Metallica" really know how to get people moving, but in two completely different ways.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*First of all, I would like to underline the sheer boredom of these CDs, which got me yawning from the very first minute.*

*I was very happy when I received your letter, although I must say that your dilemma got me thinking.*

*As soon as they realized there was no way to get the employees moving, they got excited and nervous.*

*But still both concert were great as "Elton John and "Metallica" really know how to get people moving , but in two completely different ways.*

### **FORM/USE: 'GET' + OBJECT + 'TO'–INFINITIVE**

[B2] Can use 'get' + object + 'to'–infinitive to talk about causing someone to do something.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I would like to point at a few things about our small town, which I, as a citizen, have to explain to our friends, in order to get them to visit us more frequently.*

*It is a good way to get them to shop at this particular store.*

*I do understand that it must be difficult to get these people to go to the festival.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I would like to point at a few things about our small town, which I, as a citizen, have to explain to our friends, in order to get them to visit us more frequently.*

*Nowadays there are far more means of communication which can get you to work faster and safer than earlier.*

*It is a good way to get them to shop at this particular store.*

*I do understand that it must be difficult to get these people to go to the festival.*

### **FORM/USE: 'HAVE' + OBJ + '-ED', PROACTIVE PASSIVE**

[B2] Can use have + object + –ed to talk about something where the speaker is in a pro–active or a passive role.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*After I left you on Monday, I had my car serviced and visited Washington with its wonderful memorials.*

*It's such a shame that I'm having my room redecorated but, in my view, the garden will be perfect.*

*My plans fell through because I had my purse stolen and I had no money to continue my journey.*

*The other reason against going to work by bike in a big city is that the risk of having your bike stolen is bigger.*

*I had just played in the best team of Sao Paulo but I had to stop because I had my leg broken in a car crash.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*After I left you on monday I had my car serviced and visited Washington with its' wonderful memorials.*

*It's such a shame that I'm having my room redecorated but, In my view the garden will be perfect.*

### Comments

This form is used for situations that can have either a positive or negative outcome, depending on the context and the choice of verb.

### FORM/USE: 'HAVE' + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

[C2] Can use 'have' + object + infinitive without 'to' to talk about asking or causing someone to do something, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In order to attract people and have them practise their English, we could point out the benefits and the possibilities one obtains, by acquiring a degree in this language ...*

*In assessing the prospective student's linguistic skills it does not suffice to just have him fill out a multiple-choice-form*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In order to attract people and have them practice their English, we could point out the benefits and the possibilities one obtains, by acquiring a degree in this language ...*

*Whatever their personality may be, I will always do my best to have them conquer their independence as soon as possible.*

*To have him answer one question was like pulling teeth.*

### FORM: 'GET' + '-ED'

[B1] Can form the 'get'-passive with a range of forms of 'get' + past participles.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a mirror] I bought it because mine got broken, so I need it to see myself in it. You should be careful while you are crossing or you will get hurt.*

*Last week my husband's car got stolen from our garage.*

*As we have newly recruited staff, we want our staff to get trained effectively so that they can give their best to the Company.*

*We got paid well and I managed to save the most money for my studies.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a mirror] I bought it because mine got broken , so I need it to see myself on it. you should be careful while you are crossing or you will get hurt.*

*Last week my husband's car got stolen from our garage.*

*As we have newly recruited staff, we want our staff to get trained effectively so that they can give their best to the Company.*

*Not to forget, we got paid well and I managed to save the most money for my study.*

### Comments

There are examples of get + past participle + adjective at A2, e.g. 'get married', 'get lost', 'get stressed'. They are not included here as they are not passives. ||This use is commonly associated with negative contexts, e.g. 'get broken/hurt/stuck'. It is an informal form and may be more frequent in spoken learner data.

### FORM: 'GET' + REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + '-ED'

[B2] Can use a reflexive pronoun with the 'get'-passive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Although to drive a car you must be very careful because you could get yourself killed if you don't drive carefully enough.*

*Although he has a charming personality he uses it to get himself involved in illegal activities.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Although to drive a car you me very careful because you could get yourself killed if you don't drive carefully enough.*

*Although he has a charming personality he uses it to get himself involved in illegal activities.*

### Comments

This form is often used to suggest that the subject shares some of the responsibility of and is more frequent in spoken use than written. |

## PASSIVES: FORM

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE CLAUSES

[C1] Can use a passive non-finite '-ing' form as a subordinate clause or a noun clause to give explanatory background information.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Being born and raised in Mexico, I believe her to be this country's best representative to the world.*

*Being overworked and badly paid, Polish women are torn between their dreams and their real possibilities.*

*Being invited by your boss for an unexpected lunch makes you feel noticed.*

### FORM/USE: NON-FINITE PERFECT CLAUSES

[C2] Can use passive non-finite '-ing' perfect forms in subordinate clauses to give explanatory background information.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I myself, having been educated the hard way, would specifically insist on them getting the best possible school education.*

*Having been taught the rights and the wrongs, we had an idea about everything.*

*Not having been given precise orders from the top, as usual he decided to work on his own initiative.*

### **FORM/USE: PRESENT CONTINUOUS NEGATIVE**

[C1] Can use the present continuous passive negative form to refer to ongoing situations in the present.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*In my opinion, the store is not being promoted enough.*

*Women are not being seen as just inferior to men and incapable of working outside the home.*

*Finally, I agree with the fact that mobile phones have helped the human species develop, but as long as they're not being used in a sensible way, they're a destructive weapon against children's health.*

### **FORM/USE: SUMMARISING, EVALUATING WITH 'IT'.**

[C1] Can use the passive with 'it' as a dummy subject, to summarise or evaluate in discussions, usually in formal or academic writing.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*To sum up, it can be concluded that this report has attempted to summarize the main points regarding the Spanish educational system.*

*In addition, it has been found that some products were difficult to find.*

### **FORM/USE: WITH 'BY' IN A RELATIVE CLAUSE|**

[B1] Can use the passive with 'by' in a relative clause, often to add more information.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I also like wearing clothes which are manufactured by famous brands.*

*It's the highest mountain in U.A.E. Special roads were built for people to reach the top of the mountain, which was surrounded by houses.*

### **FORM: INFINITIVE**

[B1] Can use the passive infinitive after a limited number of forms including 'going to', 'have to', 'need to', 'want to'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*It is going to be shown this Friday.*

*After that, they printed an authorisation, form which had to be signed by my parents because I'm not over eighteen.*

*He wants to be informed about sales development by the end of November 2001.*

[B2] Can use the passive infinitive affirmative and negative forms after an increasing range of main verbs, modal verbs, adjectives and nouns, in impersonal constructions.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*According to your advertisement, some training is supposed to be given.*

*My composition was ready to be printed and I was searching for a piece of paper?*

*I would prefer to sleep in a tent because I have never done it and I think it is an experience not to be missed, a very original adventure!*

*The reason that I took part in your research was to help youngsters not to be addicted to computer games ?*

*For one, the future homes might not be built out of bricks at all!*

### FORM: MODAL PERFECT

[B2] Can use the present perfect simple affirmative and negative forms with modal verbs to refer to the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think that all these problems could have been avoided and that asking for my money back is the best way of forgetting that evening.*

*I don't remember how I lost it, it might have been stolen.*

*Of course, some groups were better than others but I think they all played well and have talent: they should have been given a chance!*

*It should not have been used in this kind of article.*

### FORM: NON-FINITE PERFECT COMPLEMENTS

[C2] Can use non-finite '-ing' perfect forms of the passive as the complement of prepositions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They are expected to give the couple expensive presents as a reward for having been invited.*

*We caught the bus as if we were escaping from Saigon, and with the sensation of having been rewarded with one of the funniest holiday evenings of our lives.*

*Miss Kenton has just been employed as a housekeeper when she knocks on Stevens' pantry door and comes in without having been bidden to do so, bringing a vase of flowers.*

### Comments

Currently there are no correct uses in the negative in the CLC. More non-exam data will be needed to confirm its existence.

### FORM: PAST CONTINUOUS AFFIRMATIVE.

[B2] Can use the past continuous passive affirmative.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*However, to my disappointment, the restaurant was closed because it was being redecorated.*

*After they explained everything to him, he then knew he was being tricked by them and that this was supposed to be a special experience for him.*

*We thought that as you lived there, we could go to your house and stay there while the car was being repaired.*

### Comments

Negative forms are very low frequency.

### FORM: PAST PERFECT SIMPLE, AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use the past perfect passive affirmative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The car had been serviced and everything seemed to be all right.  
At this moment, Lime walked in and realised he had been set up.*

#### FORM: PAST PERFECT SIMPLE, NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the past perfect passive negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about a car] In fact, it hadn't been stolen, it had been taken by a man and his wife,  
because their car broke down and because she was about to have her baby?  
We waited for ages because we had not been informed.*

#### FORM: PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use past simple passive negative.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What is worse, the ticket price was not reduced despite the fact that I showed my student ID.  
I had to go to the hospital because my back hurt so badly, and I wasn't allowed to work for  
two weeks.  
I was really disappointed because a lot of things were not done.  
Some say that studying animals would be impossible, if they weren't kept in zoos?*

#### FORM: PAST SIMPLE, AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the past simple passive affirmative with a range of pronoun and noun subjects both singular and plural.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was written in a strange language that I tried to translate.  
Next day, I heard that my neighbour's car was stolen.  
They filmed the flowers and trees, and some pupils were interviewed about their work in the  
garden, too.*

#### FORM: PRESENT CONTINUOUS, AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the present continuous passive affirmative with a limited range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Did you know that the next Harry Potter movie is being filmed in my school?  
Why don't we stay at my house and visit Tokyo, where an interesting Japanese history  
exhibition is being held.  
As a result of that, Russia's economy is being followed by many experts.  
They filmed a class where the clothes are being tested at the moment and they interviewed  
some people.*

[B2] Can use the present continuous passive affirmative with an increasing range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This year's topic is the online training for employees, which is being relaunched.*

*The global temperature is rising, the ice is melting, the sea level increases and miles and miles of coast are being submerged.*

*The first thing to be linked through computers was academic knowledge, then came commercial businesses, naturally, and now, people are being linked through billions of personal computers.*

### FORM: PRESENT CONTINUOUS, NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the present continuous passive negative.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*? students are not being educated equally.*

*To conclude, in my opinion, it is important to keep as many languages as possible alive, so we can make sure that part of the human history is not being lost.*

*Firstly, the fact of different kinds of animals are in a zoo, doesn't means that they aren't being treated right.*

### FORM: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE, AFFIRMATIVE

[B2] Can use the present perfect passive affirmative form (often in the context of reporting). ► reported speech

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have been asked to write a report about an accident which happened to me last Saturday.*

*I am writing to you to give you further information about the conference organization and about the arrangements which have been made for your group of students.*

### FORM: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE, NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the present perfect passive negative form (often in the context of reporting). ► reported speech

### Corrected Learner Examples

*?the old-fashioned house which has not been used for twenty years is not a very attractive sight from our town either.*

*This happened two years ago, and the necklace hasn't been found yet ?*

### FORM: PRESENT SIMPLE, AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the present simple passive affirmative with a range of pronoun and noun subjects.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Our office is situated near the airport.*

*The walls are painted in a dark blue, and the floor is wood.*

### FORM: PRESENT SIMPLE, NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the present simple passive negative with a range of pronoun and noun subjects.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The story is about a girl, who is not accepted in her class.*

*I think we should replace the printer, because it prints very slowly and the sheets aren't printed properly.*

### FORM: WITH MODAL VERBS

[B2] Can use the passive with modal verbs in a range of contexts, with a variety of subjects.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Architects should be hired to design parks, where people could go for a walk or have a picnic. Although I had a marvellous time, I believe there are a few things that could be improved for next year's festival.*

*As a result, today, it could be said that nearly everyone is living in a digital world which means computers are necessary and very important.*

### FORM: WITH VERBS TAKING TWO OBJECTS, , WITH PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE

[B2] Can use the passive with a range of tenses and verbs needing two objects (e.g. give, offer, sell) with the direct object in subject position and the indirect object in a prepositional phrase.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Your name was given to me by a member of yours, Allan Westwood, whom I met last week. If more training is given to staff, they will be interested in their work and staff turnover will be reduced.*

*Unfortunately an interview for a job in the New Palace Hotel has been offered to me at the same time as your class.*

### FORM: WITH VERBS TAKING TWO OBJECTS.

[B1] Can use the past simple passive with a limited range of verbs needing two objects, putting the indirect object in subject position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*So I was given a ticket for a train, running from Berlin to Munich. We were lucky, because we were given another chance.*

[B2] Can use the passive with a wide range of verbs needing two objects, putting the indirect object in subject position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was very happy to hear that you have been offered two jobs, one in a restaurant and one in a museum.*

*[talking about a music contract] She was offered a contract to record a single.*

*First of all, I felt happy and pleased that your firm has been given some extra money to spend on improvements to the cinema next year.*

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS COMMENT

#### Comments

There is no evidence of use of the passive form of the present perfect continuous in the CLC.

### USE: GIVING FOCUS WITH 'BY'

[B1] Can use the passive with 'by' to give focus.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*My school was chosen by the TV company because it is one of the newest in town.*

### USE: PRESENT CONTINUOUS, FUTURE REFERENCE

[B1] Can use the present continuous passive to refer to the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The seminar is being held at Chennai in the next week.*

*We are being visited by our Sales Director on Thursday morning.*

#### USE: SUMMARIES AND EVALUATIONS

[B2] Can use the passive with modal verbs to evaluate or summarise.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In conclusion, it can be seen that the bicycle is more suitable for those who are living in a little town or in the country.*

*Next, I find that our streets are not very clean, another major problem, and I think something must be done about it.*

#### USE: WITH 'WILL', FUTURE REFERENCE

[B2] Can use the passive with 'will' to talk about the future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Just to let you know you will be booked into the Palace Hotel ?*

*Dear Mr Bixon, First of all, I am very grateful to hear that the cinema will be renovated next year.*

## PAST

### PAST CONTINUOUS

#### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He was not planning to become a professional player.*

*She was not feeling very well.*

*I tried to phone her house, but her phone wasn't working.*

*I'm writing you this letter to tell you that we felt so bad when we heard you weren't working at the school any more.*

### Comments

This is a low frequency item, and the majority of use of this structure is from Romance language L1 learners. This is probably because of task effect ? so this in fact may be an A2 feature

#### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Was my mother going to die?*

*I couldnt see anybody, then there he was, my hero, my favorite singer Bob Dylan saying my name, but was he calling me?*

*What were you doing?*

*[talking about a dream] Everything was strange. Why was I following a green fox?*

## Comments

Note that the question form is low frequency which may be due to lack of spoken data

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use the past continuous with an increasing range of adverbs in the normal mid position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*He was still waiting at the traffic light.*

*He was actually acting like a ghost.*

[B2] Can use the past continuous with a wide range of adverbs in the normal mid position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*My younger brother was constantly bothering me.*

*One day, as she was wistfully walking in the dusk of that day, she told herself she could either go on living her lonely life or make a huge effort to fit in.*

### USE: POLITENESS

[B2] Can use the past continuous to make a request or suggestions more polite or less direct.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was wondering if I could impose on you again for my next visit.*

*I was thinking that you could wear your Marilyn Monroe dress as your fancy-dress costume.*

*I was thinking that you could come to my house and see the movie.*

### USE: REASON

[B1] Can use the past continuous to give a reason for something, often with 'because'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Because she was sitting in the corner, she could see the whole view of the café in front of her.*

*Yesterday a TV company came to my school because they were doing a science quiz.*

### USE: REPEATED EVENTS

[B1] Can use the past continuous to talk about ongoing repeated events in the past, often with 'always'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Worst of all, in September it was always raining.*

*He was always talking about this prize but I never thought he would win it.*

### USE: UNDESIRED EVENTS

[C2] Can use the past continuous with 'always' or 'constantly' to talk about repeated events which are undesired or uncontrolled.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*They had been told that I was always getting into mischief and so had decided that, by buying me this diary, I would probably calm down a little and my behaviour would change.*

*I was constantly trying to balance my school life, extra-curricular activities, studies and personal life and was always running out of time.*

## PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

### FORM/USE: BACKGROUND INFORMATION WITH RELATIVE CLAUSE

[B2] Can use the past perfect continuous in a relative clause to give background information. ► relative clauses

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*And there were two men who had been chasing the murderer to find out who the man is and rescue the girl...*

*The guide also tells some funny stories about an old lord, who had been living there in the 18th century.*

*After a few minutes the door was opened and the man who had been following me came in.*

#### Comments

There is a big increase in this use at C2.

### FORM/USE: BACKGROUND INFORMATION WITH TIME CONJUNCTION

[B2] Can use the past perfect continuous after a time conjunction to give background information.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*After we had been sunbathing at the beach all day long, we went every evening to a cosy restaurant called "The Barking Cat", where we had a good meal and some wine.*

*After I had been waiting for an hour, I decided to go through the gate and go in on foot.*

#### Comments

This is very low frequency in the CLC, and fairly low frequency in the CEC ? especially with the formula After + past perfect cont + past simple

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I had been working on the project for over a year.*

*We had been waiting for hours.*

*I didn't need so much, because I'd been saving money for a few months.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the negative form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Laura realised that she had not been studying very hard lately.*

*I couldn't tell her about Mark because she hadn't been doing anything else but talking about him for the last three weeks.*

*Last week, two of your employers came to solve the problems of my central heating system as it had not been working for two days.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[C2] Can use the question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*What had he been doing that morning?*

*So, why had she been waiting for so long a time?*

### Comments

There are no results for question forms at lower levels ? this may be due to the lack of spoken data.

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B2] Can use the past perfect continuous with adverbs in the normal mid position.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I had been working hard at my job and I had really been looking forward to this holiday.*

*When he died, he was a rich man, he had only been living ten months in the house he had built for fourteen years ?*

### USE: BACKGROUND EVENTS

[B1] Can use the past perfect continuous to talk about a background action or event which began before a point in the past and was still continuing up to a point in the past when the main event happened.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I had been waiting for this letter for months, so I opened it immediately.*

*Once I had been watching TV for 6 hours when my Mum suddenly switched it off.*

### USE: CONTINUING EVENTS IN THE PAST

[B1] Can use the past perfect continuous to talk about an action or event which began before a point in the past and was still continuing up to that point, often with 'for' or 'since', to give background information.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I know it very well because we had been exchanging letters for a long time.*

*She had been going there since she was ten years old.*

*He began to think about his own thoughts while he was smoking a cigarette (he had been smoking since he was a child, since he was 12), when suddenly the curtain moved.*

### USE: RESULTS

[B2] Can use the past perfect continuous to talk about events which started before a time in the past and which finished, but where the effects or results were still important at a point in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Unfortunately it had been snowing for a long time and so I was unable to go out for a walk.*

*We had been working very hard all the morning so by that time, I was very tired.*

## PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

### FORM/USE: AFTER 'BECAUSE', EXPLANATIONS

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple after 'because' to give explanatory information.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*He was sleeping but I realised that this was because he had lost a lot of blood.*

*I was driving on to my parents' house because I had arranged to have dinner with them.*

### FORM/USE: AFTER 'IF ONLY' AND 'WISH', IMAGINED PAST

[B2] Can use the affirmative form after 'if only', and the affirmative and negative forms after 'wish' to talk about regret.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If only I had listened to my father!*

*If only I had met her before.*

*I am sure, because at the end of the concert, I said to my friend "I wish they had played a bit more".*

*I wish I hadn't told Pat about my plans.*

*I wish I hadn't done that but now I can't do anything.*

### FORM/USE: AFTER 'IF ONLY', IMAGINED PAST

[C2] Can use the negative form after 'if only' to express regret.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If only she had not changed, if only I had helped her, maybe we would still be best friends and I would not be sitting here, writing about her!*

*If only I hadn't been that rude!*

### FORM/USE: AFTER 'IF' CLAUSES

[B1] Can use the past perfect simple in 'if'-clauses to talk about imagined situations in the past, often with regret. ► 'if'-clauses

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If the weather had been better, we would have enjoyed it more.*

*If you had gone there with me, you would have been happy.*

*So I decided to go back and look for them in the park: believe it or not I would have spent all night in the park, if it hadn't been closed since six o'clock!*

### FORM/USE: INVERSION WITH 'NEVER (BEFORE)'

[B2] Can invert the subject and auxiliary verb after 'never (before)' to talk about a unique event, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Never had I been in such a ridiculous situation!*

*Never before had we seen such marvellous species of fish.*

### FORM/USE: INVERSION WITH 'NO SOONER ? THAN'

[B2] Can invert the subject and auxiliary verb with 'no sooner ? than' to talk about something that happened immediately before something else, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*? but no sooner had I gone to bed than someone broke the door down.*

*But, no sooner had I got there than my classmates informed me that I had done well in my physics exam.*

**FORM/USE: INVERSION, IMAGINED PAST**

[C1] Can invert the subject and affirmative auxiliary verb to talk about imagined situations in the past, often with regret, in formal contexts.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Had I known the tour would be so bad, I wouldn't have booked it.*

*Had they been new people, travellers from other countries, I could have taken it, but all the customers were English!*

*Sometimes I think that had I gone to Britain without this experience, my life would have been different.*

**FORM: AFFIRMATIVE**

[B1] Can use the affirmative form.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I felt really sorry for you after I had read your last letter.*

*[?] I'd forgotten that I have an appointment with the doctor [?]*

**FORM: ELLIPSIS**

[B2] Can leave out the subject before the past perfect simple where it is understood from the previous clause.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*But now she felt stronger and had lost her fear.*

*Simon was a very famous writer and had written ten best-sellers.*

*All her friends from Chicago had come to visit her and had brought a huge chocolate cake with them.*

*They were cold and had gone numb.*

**FORM: FIXED EXPRESSIONS 'HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR', 'IF IT HADN'T BEEN FOR'**

[C2] Can use 'had it not been for' ? and 'if it hadn't been for' with a modal form for giving reasons.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Had it not been for the fact that I had already read the article, I would have thought that this woman was at least thirty years old.*

*Another aspect of his emotional side is the fact that he is a very private person, and had it not been for this feature, he might have been able to react differently.*

*If it hadn't been for my lack of knowledge, skills, experience, and some other things like that, I wouldn't have been fired.*

*They had become very good friends and their friendship could have gone a little further if it hadn't been for Dan's character.*

**FORM: INVERSION WITH 'HARDLY ?WHEN'**

[C2] Can invert the subject and affirmative auxiliary verb with 'hardly ? when' to talk about something that happened immediately before something else, in formal contexts.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Hardly had she spoken these words when it dawned on the musician that life could not continue like that.*

*Hardly had he taken them from the counter when the monster vanished again.*

**FORM: NEGATIVE**

[B1] Can use negative forms.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*The ABC Company called this morning to say that our company had not delivered the goods on time.*

*I hadn't heard from her for two months.*

**FORM: QUESTIONS**

[B2] Can use question forms.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Had I made the same mistake twice?*

*? the question was: Why had he done that?*

**FORM: WITH ADVERBS**

[B1] Can use the past perfect simple with a limited range of adverbs (including 'never', 'ever', 'just', 'always', 'already') in the normal mid-position. ► adverbs

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*It was the most beautiful one I had ever seen.*

*So, she came to America to see a relation she had never seen before, and she spent the money with me.*

*I had just arrived from school when I saw the letter.*

*I had always wanted to visit European cities and Paris was one of the easiest cities to get to from England.*

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple with a wide range of adverbs (including 'finally', 'recently', 'simply') in the normal mid-position. ► adverbs

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*He had finally achieved his goal!*

*She had suddenly woken up at that noise, but now was trying to persuade herself it was just a dream.*

*And had all the furniture and David's personal things been stolen by thieves or had they just simply disappeared?*

**USE: BACKGROUND INFORMATION, RELATIVE CLAUSE**

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple in relative clauses to give background information. ► relative clauses

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*After a while Mr and Mrs Landsbury, the couple who had organised the party, got everybody's attention and [?] asked everybody to stay calm.*

*He went to the hotel because he wanted to find out who the person was that had sent him a mysterious letter?*

*[?] it was Annika who had arranged a huge party for her, and all her friends and family, at the airport.*

**USE: CHANGE OF SITUATION**

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple to talk about situations which changed.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*After the show we had planned to go to the theatre restaurant. But it was closed.  
We had planned to go to Switzerland, but unfortunately our car broke down.  
At first she had wanted to make the first move but she wasn't quite convinced.*

### USE: REPORTS OF QUESTIONS

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple to report questions, where the main verb in the reporting clause is in the past simple. ► reported speech

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I asked him who had given him my phone number and he said it had been me.  
He didn't find her, in spite of looking for her in every room of her house, so he decided to come to my house to ask me if I had seen her somewhere.  
I asked her what had happened and she told me that my grandmother was very ill.*

### USE: REPORTS OF STATEMENTS

[B2] Can use the past perfect simple to report statements, where the main verb in the reporting clause is in the past simple. ► reported speech

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[?] one morning she was listening to the radio, when suddenly the announcer said that the police had arrested a man who had stolen five expensive and unique paintings.  
She tried to explain what had happened, but she couldn't.  
I looked at the address and I knew what had happened to my sister's postcard.*

### USE: TIME UP TO THEN

[B1] Can use the past perfect simple to talk about a time before another time in the past.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He then thought how stupid he had been.  
Actually I'd arranged an appointment with my doctor before calling you.*

## PAST SIMPLE

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form with a wide range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I convinced some of my friends to come with me even if they don't like rap music.  
Previously I faced many failures but I never gave up.  
The cameraman filmed us during a lesson and later, walking to the playground.*

### FORM: INVERSION WITH 'NOT ONLY ? BUT ALSO'

[C1] Can use the inverted form of the past simple with auxiliary 'do', in the phrase 'not only ? but also'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The companies I found at the trade fair were very varied. Not only did I find high-technology companies, but also shoemakers, advertisement companies and plane manufacturers to name but a few.*

*Not only didn't we travel 5000 miles in 30 days, as you had advertised, but also we stayed 8 days in just one place, which had nothing interesting to see except a church.*

*Not only didn't I learn any new grammar but also I couldn't enrich my vocabulary.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative form with an increasing range of verbs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I didn't realise I had lost the ring till I was at home.*

*I didn't trust him.*

*[talking about a spare television] ? we had one in the garage that we did not use.*

[B2] Can use the negative form with a wide range of regular and irregular verbs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I didn't hesitate and went there straight away.*

*I'm sure it wasn't my fault as I didn't switch anything on or off at that moment.*

*? we really enjoyed our holiday even though things did not turn out they way we planned.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'yes/no', 'wh-', tag and negative question forms with a limited range of verbs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Did you receive my present?*

*How did you spend your weekend?*

*Why didn't he call me?*

*We arranged to meet each other next Tuesday at 11 o'clock, didn't we?*

*Didn't you spend your last holiday with them as well?*

[B2] Can use 'yes/no', 'wh-', tag and negative question forms with an increasing range of verbs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Are you still looking for a job or did you succeed in finding one?*

*When did you last see your wife and your children?*

*It was great to have met you, and we certainly had a terrific time together, didn't we?*

*Didn't you tell me that you had to go to Orleans today?*

*Why didn't you say something about it?*

[C1] Can use 'yes/no', 'wh-', tag and negative question forms with a wide range of verbs. ►

Questions

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Did you spot the fact that what is expected from us in Tall Trees Campsite is to help in organising the entertainment?*

*How did it turn out then?*

*I told you about Peter and Mary, didn't I?*

*Didn't we all dream of being famous once in our lives?*

### FORM: WITH SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

[B2] Can use the past simple with a range of subordinating conjunctions, including 'as soon as', 'before', 'if', 'once', 'since', 'so', 'until', 'when', 'while'.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*? as soon as we went down to around 15 metres in depth, we saw a lot of coloured fish.*

*I told you about that terrible hotel I had stayed in before I came to visit you.*

*Once he got inside, he started searching for some clues to that horrible crime.*

### FORM: WITH TIME ADJUNCTS

[B2] Can use a range of time adjuncts with the past simple.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I also worked as a helper on a summer camp for primary schoolchildren in Canada last summer.*

*I can remember one which happened to me last year, during the Christmas holiday.*

*He worked hard for quite a long time to earn the money he needed.*

### USE: COMPLEX ORDERING OF PAST EVENTS

[C1] Can use the past simple to order sequences of events in the past in a complex way.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Following advice from a friend, I purchased the English version of your product, only to find out its quality did not match the promises made in your advertisement.*

*After having discussed this subject with the other member, we came up with the following decisions. First of all ?*

### USE: FOR EMPHASIS, WITH 'DID'

[C1] Can use the past simple with 'did' for emphasis.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*We did reach the target figure and we have sent about 85 percent of the money to the hospital.*

*[in a letter defending the organisation of an event] We did have 34 games and one stall with beverages and snacks.*

*It is true that it did rain during the day but it was not a "sudden downpour", as you wrote. It was more a small shower ?*

### USE: HABITUAL STATES OR ACTIONS

[B1] Can use the past simple to talk about habitual states or actions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*? he always seemed so confident to me!*

*? we always talked during the class.*

### USE: IMAGINED SITUATIONS AFTER 'IF'

[B1] Can use the past simple after 'if' to talk about the possible result of an imagined situation in the present or future.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It would be better if you spent some time in the fresh air with your friends or walking in a park.*

*If you wanted to do some outdoor activities, we could go fishing or even walking through the green fields.*

### USE: ORDERING OF PAST EVENTS

[B1] Can use the past simple to order sequences of events in the past, in the context of narratives.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I remember her as a shy girl, but I read she became a manager, she went on lots of trips, she met a lot of new friends, she got married and then she got divorced.*

*We met at 9 in the morning and decided to go to the seven lakes, a very wonderful place not far from the centre of the town: lots of trees, lots of flowers and very fresh air.*

*We waited for the suitcase for two days and then we bought new dresses.*

### USE: POLITENESS AFTER 'IF'

[B2] Can use the past simple after 'if' as a politeness structure, especially in letters and emails.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think it would be very helpful if I told you my own case.*

*It would be great if you sent me a free copy of the next edition of The Student Tourist Guidebook.*

*I would be grateful if you gave me this job.*

### USE: POLITENESS: 'I THOUGHT'

[C1] Can use the past simple 'I thought' as a politeness structure to sound less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I understand you are quite concerned about the matter and I thought it would be a good idea to let you know what is really going on.*

*The reason why I'm writing to you is that I thought you might be interested in writing about a special dish from your country for the international cookbook.*

### USE: POLITENESS: 'I WONDERED' AND 'I WANTED'

[B2] Can use the past simple with 'I wondered' and 'I wanted' as politeness structures, when making polite requests and thanking.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*So, I wondered if you could introduce me to somebody who knows how to use a camera, so that I will be able to record my trip for you.*

*I wanted to know if the rooms are single or double, if they have showers and if there is room service. ? Secondly, I also wanted to know if there is a gym in the hotel ?*

*First of all, I wanted to thank you for giving me the first prize in your competition.*

### USE: REGRET

[B1] Can use the past simple with 'wish (that)' to express regret that things are not different.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I wish that you were here, cycling with us.*

*I wish you were here with me. I wish we were together.*

*I wish weekends lasted five days.*

## PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

### FORM/USE: INVERSION

[C2] Can invert the subject and affirmative auxiliary verb with 'not only ? but' as a focusing device. ► focus ► inversion

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not only have I been wandering its streets ever since I was ten, but I have also come to know most of the main characters of its history in the past 50 years.*

*Not only have I been expecting it for the last few months but I will also give some support to my wife, who has been feeling a little nervous these last weeks.*

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have been thinking about your letter.*

*We've been studying together since grade one.*

*The letter was from my brother, who has been living in New York since he graduated from university.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B2] Can use the negative form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I hope that I have not been wasting your time and giving you too much trouble.*

*Hope you haven't been working too hard!*

*The heating system has not been working properly since your staff completed the work in my house.*

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use the question form with a limited range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Have you been thinking about it a lot?!*

*What have you been doing?*

*[talking about musical instruments] ? how long have you been playing them?*

### Comments

Note that questions are generally low frequency in the CLC probably due to lack of spoken data.

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B2] Can use the present perfect continuous with adverbs in the normal mid position.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have just been reading an article in your newspaper this morning, about The Westfield Music Festival.*

*I've also been singing in a choir for five years, so I'm very familiar with it.*

*You have already been complaining about headaches and insomnia.*

### USE: RECENT PAST

[B2] Can use the present perfect continuous to focus on a finished activity in the recent past but where the effects or results are still important or relevant.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*They might be slippery when it has been snowing.*

### Comments

This is largely a spoken language structure when the speaker observes something and comments, based on present evidence. "Look it's been snowing. It might be slippery." This may need to go in at a lower level when spoken data is available.

### USE: REPEATED CONTINUING EVENTS

[B1] Can use the present perfect continuous to talk about repeated activities which began in the past and are still continuing.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've been watching TV a lot, specially the sports programmes.*

*I have been playing my new game.*

*Last week I went out with my cousin Jim and his wife; he told me he had joined a sport club and he has been going there for two weeks;*

### USE: SINGLE CONTINUING EVENT

[B1] Can use the present perfect continuous to talk about a single activity or state that began in the past and is still continuing, often with 'for' or 'since'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've been studying International business there for four years.*

*I've been living here since last April and it seemed no problem during spring and summer.*

*Susan has been working in our company for 6 years as a Sales Representative.*

## PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

### FORM/USE: DURATION WITH 'SINCE'

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple with 'since' to talk about duration.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I have been here since August 2006.*

*It's been a long time since we went out together so I think we will have a great time at the park playing sports and chatting!*

*Many things have changed since your last visit.*

*Such a long time has passed since the last time we met.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'ALREADY'

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple with 'already' to emphasise that something is done, often before the expected time. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've already planned the party, bought his present, and most important of all, I've already told everyone.*

*I have already bought a new arm-chair, yellow and comfortable.*

*In Spain lots of universities have already accepted this plan..*

*So we decided to go to Farhang cinema tonight and we have already bought the tickets.*

*She has already won three gold medals at international tournaments.*

### FORM/USE: WITH 'STILL'

[B2] Can use the negative form of the present perfect simple with 'still' to emphasise that something that was expected to happen continues not to happen. ► adverbs

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I still haven't read the role but when I read it, I was very excited and I accepted Mr Brown's offer.*

*You asked me whether I bought a computer or a bicycle and I have to tell you that I still haven't decided.*

### FORM: AFFIRMATIVE

[B1] Can use the affirmative forms with a range of pronouns and nouns and an increasing range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I've left some clothes at the dry cleaner's 100 yards from my home, in Park Street.*

*It's been an amazing week for me.*

*She is from California, but she has just moved to Italy.*

*Our company has signed deals with a few German companies.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use the negative forms with a range of pronouns and an increasing range of verbs.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He hasn't spoken to anyone from that time till now.*

*She is a quiet person so she has not made a lot of friends.*

*We haven't decided where to go yet, but probably it will be to somewhere like Australia or New Zealand.*

[C1] Can use the full negative forms with a wide range of verbs, often in formal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Thus, you have not fulfilled your task with due care, as you have stated in your letter.*

*Somehow, in my country education has not evolved, although it manages to maintain some advantages.*

### FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use the negative question form.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Haven't you seen it yet?*

*Haven't your parents given you their advice?*

### Comments

This is a low frequency item, probably because this is a spoken language feature. There are no examples in the corpus of 'hasn't' in questions except as tag questions.

### FORM: QUESTIONS

[B2] Can use the question form with an increasing range of verbs.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*How has your family been?*

*But what have these animals done?*

*In 1970 people in the UK married in their early 20s, but nowadays they marry at the end of their 20s. But why has this changed?*

### FORM: WITH ADVERBS

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple with an increasing range of adverbs in the normal mid position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*This is a famous seafood restaurant, you know, I've always loved seafood.*

*Have you ever been to Gorgeousbi?*

### USE: NEWSWORTHY

[C2] Can use the present perfect simple to introduce news.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*A new shopping centre has opened in our town.*

#### Comments

There are very few examples of this use in the CLC data. It is more common in spoken usage or in news reporting followed by a past simple.

### USE: RECENT PAST

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple to refer to a finished event or state in the recent past, that has a present relevance, often with 'just'. ► adverbs

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*My mother has broken her right leg.*

*I've just received your mail.*

*I've found a job for you.*

### USE: UNFINISHED

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple to refer to a state or period of time which is unlimited or indefinite.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*In spite of bad weather forecasts on TV, it has been a sunny, warm weekend.*

*I've had a really nice week.*

*It is a great movie. It has won a lot of prizes so I think it will be good to see it at the cinema.*

### USE: WITH SUPERLATIVE

[B1] Can use the present perfect simple with a superlative adjective to talk about a unique experience. ► adjectives: superlatives

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This restaurant has the most delicious shrimps I have ever tasted.*

*That is the best game I've ever played.*

*I've never been there before but my friend Pepo said that it is the biggest park she has ever seen.*

*At the top of that, you will see the most amazing view you have ever seen.*

## PREPOSITIONS

### PREPOSITIONS

#### FORM/USE: FORMAL

[B2] Can use less frequent simple prepositions, often in a more formal, literary or business context.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Suddenly the lights went out and a kind of silent screaming was heard throughout the whole dark room.*

*So why don't you act upon my advice?*

*I took bus number 19 from Angel tube station toward Battersea Park.*

*In Tottenham, transport is easy, buses are frequent, unlike other areas.*

*A survey was carried out amongst the students and teachers.*

[C1] Can use less frequent complex prepositions, often in a more formal, literary or business context.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's unbelievable that this civilization that lived a long time ago could be so ahead of their time.*

*I think that the next area to develop will be the car industry, which will develop cars that are going to work by solar energy, on account of the levels of pollution in big cities.*

#### FORM/USE: PREPOSITION + 'WH-'WORD

[B2] Can use preposition + relative pronoun as complement, to avoid preposition stranding, often in formal contexts. ► Clauses: relative

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*According to your advertisement in a language magazine, you have a vacancy in which I am very interested.*

*I hope that you can help me by answering some questions about the club of which you are the secretary.*

*In my opinion children need someone to whom they can talk.*

#### FORM: 'ADVERB' + PREPOSITION

[B1] Can use adverbs of degree to modify prepositions and prepositional phrases.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's quite near my house so I can go there easily.*

*When I was trying to reach the only frame of light I could see in the woods, something moved right behind me.*

*I'm going to put it right in front of the window, so I have enough light.*

*I felt I was flying and it was really like a dream.*

*But anyway it's enjoyable to shop for clothes especially with a group of friends.*

### FORM: COMPLEX

[B1] Can use an increasing range of complex prepositions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*My parents weren't happy when they heard that I wanted to go to Croatia with my friends instead of flying to the USA.*

*The company chose my school thanks to the excellent results of the students.*

*It was saying that some company can find me a job in the UK and I can earn up to £ 1000 per month.*

*[talking about a watch] I was going out of the shop when I noticed that I had lost it.*

*I would like to apologise because, due to a dental appointment, I will not be able to participate in the English class tomorrow.*

*The best place to stay is a hotel a bit outside of the city.*

[B2] Can use a wide range of complex prepositions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She did not say very much except for "oh" and "yes, yes" every once in a while.*

*[talking about animals in zoos] And it gives them the possibility of gradually gaining knowledge about other living creatures apart from humans.*

*[giving suggestions on how to make the reception area of a school more attractive] It is based on my personal opinions in addition to a sample of 500 people who are students and staff at the school, and also visitors.*

*Now, as for the camping, I admit that I'm not a great fan of it.*

*I hope that, in spite of some small problems, people liked the festival and we will be able to attend it next year.*

### Comments

Also: 'but for', 'in favour of'

### FORM: SIMPLE

[B1] Can use a wide range of simple (single word) prepositions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If it is raining, the rain enters through the holes in the roof and makes the house wet.*

*To my surprise, there was a charming beach along the cycle route.*

*Don't forget to meet me at the theme park beside the main entrance.*

*In the middle of the room there is a big bed between two windows and above the bed there is a beautiful painting.*

*I think Bremen won't change that much within the next 20 years.*

*I hate shopping via the internet.*

### Comments

Other prepositions used successfully at B1: 'besides', 'towards', 'among', 'across', 'down'

### FORM: STRANDING

[B1] Can end a reported question clause and a relative clause with a preposition, where the preposition is stranded from its complement. ► Clauses: relative

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*So this is the best festival I been to.*

*Please give him all the information he asks for.*

*Everybody should see which company I work for.*

## PRESENT

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS

#### FORM/USE: WITH ADVERBS OF INDEFINITE FREQUENCY

[B2] Can use the present continuous with an increasing range of adverbs of indefinite frequency, often to talk about surprising or undesirable situations or events.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*? scientists don't really get together with top models ? they are constantly studying and reading books, whereas the job of a top model is actually based on physical appearance.*

*? you're continuously dealing with toxic substances and flammable liquids?*

#### Comments

There is very poor increment in adverbs in general in the data. | This is one of the main areas where candidates at B1 and B2 could improve their marks.

[C2] Can use the present continuous with a wide range of adverbs of indefinite frequency, often to talk about surprising or undesirable situations or events.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*? we are persistently asking ourselves questions about where we are from and why we are here.*

*During life we are permanently learning and increasing our knowledge.*

#### USE: EVENTS IN PROGRESS

[B1] Can use the present continuous with a wide range of verbs to talk about situations and events in progress.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm planning a picnic on Saturday in the park.*

*I'm expecting my cousin to visit me.*

*I think I am falling in love.*

#### USE: POLITENESS

[C2] Can use the present continuous with verbs that are not usually used in this form to make statements and requests sound less direct.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Considering the importance of the matter, I am asking for your financial support.*

*I'm asking permission to be excused from work for at least three days.*

*If we're wanting to make progress in prolonging the length of human lives, we equally have to be willing to spend time and make an effort...*

### USE: RHETORICAL QUESTIONS

[C1] Can use question forms to ask rhetorical questions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[writing about fashion] Are we becoming shallow?*

*Why is technology taking over our lives?*

*Why am I explaining all this? The only reason is that I want to show that young people are interested in sports.*

### Comments

Note that there is less opportunity to use rhetorical questions at FCE, as candidates don't always get an essay question. Students taking FCE are encouraged to use these in writing tasks as they are good discriminators in marking.

### USE: TEMPORARY REPEATED ACTIONS

[B1] Can use the present continuous to describe temporary actions which are repeated or regular.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm doing a lot of great leisure activities.*

*[talking about an interactive internet game which is played over a period of time] I'm playing this exciting game called Diner Dash; it's about making a restaurant.*

*I have to go to the doctor because I'm having some problems.*

### USE: TEMPORARY SITUATIONS

[B1] Can use the present continuous with a wide range of verbs to talk about temporary situations.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm enjoying a sunny day, much better than England.*

*Now, I'm in a hotel, here in the centre of Madrid, and it's raining a little bit.*

## PRESENT SIMPLE

### FORM/USE: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS, OPINION

[C1] Can use the negative question form to check opinions.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Doesn't it sound fascinating?*

*Don't we all like presents?*

*Don't you think that fashion always looks funny if it is not the fashion of today?*

### Comments

Spoken face to face data is likely to show more examples of this form being used to clarify information.

## FORM/USE: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS, PERSUASION

[C1] Can use the negative question form as a persuasion strategy.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Don't you just hate taking the bus to school every morning? well I have a perfect solution for you, a great bike with good brakes, a bell and lights. it is a great bike but since I never use it I would be happy to sell it to you.*

*Don't you find that when you are having a shower or bath, you occasionally run out of water?*

## FORM/USE: NEGATIVE TAG QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'don't you think' or 'don't you agree' to look for agreement or an opinion.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It's a bit strange, don't you think?*

*I think it's the best way, don't you agree?*

*The surprise will be even bigger if I wait. Don't you think so?*

## FORM: INVERSION WITH 'NOT ONLY ? BUT ALSO'

[B2] Can use the inverted form of the past simple with auxiliary 'do', in the phrase 'not only ? but also'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Not only do they save you filing time, but also they save office space.*

*Not only does it look nice but it's also full of places that we should visit, such as the enormous old castle or the extremely fascinating butterfly farm!!*

## FORM: QUESTIONS

[B1] Can use 'yes/no' and 'wh-' question forms with a wide range of subjects.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Does your brother go with your parents?*

*Which programmes do we like to watch?*

*Where do they want to spend their holidays?*

*How does he know my name?*

## USE: MENTAL PROCESS VERBS

[B1] Can use the present simple with an increasing a range of mental process verbs, including 'remember', 'understand', 'believe'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I'm reading an adventure book, I don't remember the title but it's very boring!*

*Well, I totally understand that you want to go somewhere with your friends.*

## USE: REPORTING VERBS

[B1] Can use the present simple with a limited range of reporting verbs, including 'say', 'show'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*For example, I know a person that moved to my city two years ago, and now he says that it improved his social life.*

*The movie shows how a pretty woman with all the problems you can imagine can do different things to make people feel better.*



[C1] Can use the present simple with a wide range of reporting verbs, especially in academic contexts, including 'demonstrate', 'illustrate'.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The popularity of this TV game in Russia clearly demonstrates the nature of human fears and dreams.*

*The 2 charts illustrate the number of employees, and the trends in profit for three factories, namely the factories located in London, Leeds, and Bristol, which belong to the same company, during the year 2003.*

#### **USE: SPEECH ACT VERBS**

[B1] Can use the present simple with a limited range of speech act verbs, including 'suggest', 'apologise', 'recommend'.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I suggest that if you travel, you should pay for your trip.*

*I apologise for missing your class.*

*For these reasons, I definitely recommend staying in a city.*

[B2] Can use the present simple with a wide range of speech act verbs, including '(dis)agree', 'accept', 'advise'.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*We disagree with the new numbering system as it is too complicated.*

*I'd love to go to the concert with you so I accept your invitation.*

*I advise you to take a coat because it's winter, you know, it's a bit cold.*

#### **USE: STORIES AND COMMENTARIES**

[B2] Can use the present simple to summarise events or plot in a story or piece of history, often to give immediate dramatic interest.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The plot of the book takes place in Vienna after the Second World War.*

*The scene takes place on a train. ? On this train, a man is sleeping. He dreams. He dreams of one of his work colleagues who lost his job last year.*

## **PRONOUNS**

### **DEMONSTRATIVES**

#### **FORM/USE: 'THESE ONES', 'THOSE ONES' SUBSTITUTION**

[B2] Can use 'these ones', 'those ones' as a substitute for plural countable nouns that have previously been mentioned.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*This is only the beginning; there are a lot of things that should be done, but let's just start with these ones.*

*I have got several of those ones.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*This is only the beginning; there are a lot of things that should be done, but let's just start with these ones.*

*Beside those ones, there's also an equal number of individuals who get crippled for life.*

### Comments

There are very few examples of this feature in the CLC. This normally a function of spoken language and context where a speaker points to a physically present object. It may be a can-do at a lower level in spoken data.

### FORM/USE: 'THIS ONE', 'THAT ONE' SUBSTITUTION

[B1] Can use 'this one', 'that one' as a substitute for countable singular nouns that have previously been mentioned.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I don't usually wear dresses but I had to buy this one because I am going to be in a singing competition.*

*[talking about a film] I have chosen that one because of my father and brother, they also like it.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I don't usually wear dress but I had to buy this one because I will have a singing competition.  
[talking about a film] I have choosen that one because of my father and brother, they also like it.*

### Comments

This is normally a function of spoken language and context where a speaker points to a physically present object. It may be a can-do at a lower level in spoken data.

### FORM/USE: 'THOSE', SUBSTITUTION

[B2] Can use 'those' as a substitute, followed by a relative clause or '-ed' or '-ing'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Moreover, for those who are not interested in sports and who prefer shopping, it would be a good idea to prevent cars and especially lorries from running in the center of the town.*

*In my opinion students should be forced to study all of the subjects, not only those which are enjoyable.*

*[talking about buildings] Those that can be rebuilt wouldn't be demolished.*

*The opening hours of the store came in for a lot of praise, with 87% of those surveyed ranking it as good.*

*All those attending are requested to be on time.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Moreover, for those who are not interested in sports and who prefer shopping, it should be a good idea to prevent cars and especially lorries from running in the center of the town.*

*The opening hours of the store came in for a lot of praise with 87% of those surveyed ranking it as good.*

*In my opinion students should be forced to study all of the subjects, not only those which are enjoyable*

*[talking about buildings] Those that can be rebuilt wouldn't be demolished.*

*All those attending are requested to be on time.*

### FORM: 'THAT OF', 'THOSE OF'

[C1] Can use 'that of' and 'those of' as a possessive form, in formal and professional contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is widely known that the Russian educational system differs dramatically from that of the European, Asian or American countries.*

*The strength of our product is that it fits the customers' demands – especially those of middle-aged single consumers.*

*Therefore, I urge you to publish this letter and reconsider your opinions, which clearly do not reflect those of the general population.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It is widely known that Russian educational system differs dramatically from that of the European, Asian or American countries.*

*The strength of our product is that it fits the customers' demands – especially those of middle aged single consumers.*

*Therefore, I urge you to publish this letter and reconsider your opinions, which clearly do not reflect those of the general population.*

### FORM: 'THESE'

[B1] Can use 'these' as a pronoun with plural reference. ► noun phrases

### Corrected Learner Examples

*These are the most important years for us as teenagers, and they have to be the best years!*

*These are the main things that I can tell you.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*These are the most important years for us as teenagers, and they have to be the best and the funniest years!*

*These are the main things that I can tell you.*

### FORM: 'THOSE'

[B1] Can use 'those' as a pronoun with plural reference. ► noun phrases

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Most of my clothes are lemon, green or orange, those are my favourite colours!*

*Well, those are my ideas but you are the ones that are coming, and maybe you don't like the countryside.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Most of my clothes are lemon green or orange, those are my favourite colours!*

*Well, those are my ideas but you are the ones that are coming so maybe you don't like the countryside.*

### FORM: MODIFYING

[B1] Can use quantifying determiners + 'of' with demonstrative pronouns ► determiners: demonstrative

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you can't, you must choose one of these.*

*And we have to go to Sydney to see all of that.*

*There are a lot of programmes in my country, but only some of these are interesting.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you can't, you must chose one of these.*

*And we have to go Sydney to see all of that.*

*There are lot of programmes in my contry, but only some of these are interesting.*

### USE: 'THESE', ALREADY MENTIONED

[B1] Can use 'these' as a pronoun to refer to something with immediate relevance which has already been mentioned. ► noun phrases ► pronouns: demonstrative

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He is very clever and generous, and these are the things that I like most about him.*

*There are a few interesting and funny programmes like The Simpsons, Password or José Mota's hour. These are the only programmes I like watching.*

*I think that we have similar taste about things like these.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*He is very clever and generous, and these are the things that I like most on him.*

*There are a few interesting and funny programmes like The Simpsons, Password or José Mota's hour (that have finished since May). These are the only programmes I like watching.*

*I think that we have similar taste about things like these.*

### Comments

We have no examples of deictic use of this, common in spoken language where a speaker points to a physically present object. It may be a can-do at a lower level in spoken data. || These examples focus on distance which is not physical. By using these the writer is choosing to make something CLOSER or immediately relevant rather than distancing it in terms of affiliation.

### USE: 'THIS', ALREADY MENTIONED

[B1] Can use 'this' as a pronoun to refer back to whole clauses or sentences, especially to highlight or continue an important topic.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*To stay fit I'm eating lots of fruit and vegetables, but meat and fish, too. I think you should do this, too, if you haven't done it in the past.*

*People usually don't care about the cost. Because of this, weddings are more amazing.*

*My room seems to be very cold and very unfriendly. I think flowers and pictures change this.*

*Our department currently has a lot of work to do, because there are so many conferences to arrange, and it needs a person to be in charge of this.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*To stay fit I'm eating lots of fruits and vegetables, but mean and fish, too. I think you should do this , too, if you haven't done it in the past.*

*People usually don't care about the costs. Because of this, weddings are more amazing.*

*Now, I'm going to buy pictures to hang them against the wall, because my room seems to be very cold and very unfriendly. I think flowers and pictures change this.*

*Our department currently has a lot of work to do, because there are many conferences to arrange, and it needs a person to be incharge of this.*

### Comments

There is evidence of this A2 but none of it is correct. 'This' is used instead of 'it'.

## USE: 'THOSE', ALREADY MENTIONED

[B1] Can use 'those' as a pronoun to refer to things which have already been mentioned. ► noun phrases

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Those are the things I like the most about her.*

*I don't really think I'd move, but if I had to, I would love to live in a city like Paris or Rome. I'm very keen on cities like those.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Those are the things I like the most about her.*

*I don't really think I'd move, but if I had to, I would love to live in cities like Paris or Roma. I'm very keen on cities like those.*

## GENERIC USE

### FORM/USE: GENDER NEUTRAL

[B2] Can use 'they/them' to refer back to indefinite pronouns when we do not know the number or gender.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If someone is watching a film that they don't like they can always choose another channel to watch to.*

*If anyone wishes to make any presentation they can contact Mr. Hari, Events Department.*

*If a student wants to make music there is no point teaching them science, but to be a good musician I think general knowledge is important as well.*

[B2] Can use 'he/she', 'he' or 'she' or 'they' to refer back to gender neutral singular nouns or indefinite pronouns when we are not sure of the gender.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*If a child had free time, he/she would play on his/her own and not with other children. Furthermore, if somebody wants to be a journalist, he or she has to have an enormous knowledge of the world and people, because sometimes they must act like psychologists in order to obtain pieces of information.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*If a child had free time he/she would play on his/her own and not with other children. Furthermore if somebody wants to be a journalist he or she has to have an enormous knowledge about the world, people, because sometimes they must act like psychologists in order to obtain a pieces of information.*

### **USE: 'ONE', GENERAL, FORMAL**

[B1] Can use 'one' to refer to people in general, in formal contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*The television, I think, is like a box where one can find anything: rubbish and good things. One more reason I like Singapore is that one sees cats everywhere.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*The television, I think, is like a box where one can find anything, rubbish and good thing. One more reason I like Singapore is that one sees cats everywhere.*

### **USE: 'WE', 'US', GENERAL**

[B2] Can use 'we' and 'us' to refer to people in general.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*These days the car is everywhere, we can see cars all over the world. In this film we can see the life of a female teenager ? in South-Africa. We all know that being a writer is difficult; either we know how to write or we don't. Some of us find it very useful, whereas others still have difficulty in accepting technology as a valuable thing for everyone. [talking about zoos giving us a chance to see many exotic animals] Zoos give us different opportunities to do that and so to understand nature.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*In our days the car is everywhere, we can see cars all over the world. In this film we can see the life of a female teenager ? in South-Africa. We all know that being a writer is difficult; or we know how to write or we don't. Some of us find it very useful, whereas others still have difficulty in accepting technology as a valuable thing for everyone. [Talking about zoos giving us a chance to see many exotic animals] Zoos give us different opportunities to do that and so to understand the nature.*

### **Comments**

This is a level above EVP findings but we're not finding general consensus of this use until B2

## **INDEFINITE – THING, –ONE, –BODY ETC**

### **FORM/USE: 'ANYTHING', ELLIPSIS**

[C1] Can use 'anything' in an ellipted clause, ('if there is anything ?').

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Anything else you need, ask Sarah.*

*Anything you need in connection with my report, please don't hesitate to contact me.*

*Anything you want to ask me, feel free to do so.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Anything else you need, ask Sarah.*

*Anything you need in conection with my report, please don't hesitate to contact me.*

*Anything you want to aske me, feel free to do so.*

## **FORM/USE: 'ANYTHING', FOCUS**

[C1] Can use 'anything' with post-modifiers to form complex noun phrases as subjects with a singular verb, to give focus.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Anything else can be attached too if needed.*

*Anything to show how happy you are for them will do.*

*Anything that puts you in contact with the English language is important.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Anything else can be attached too if needed.*

*Anything to show how happy you are for them will do.*

*Anything that puts you in contact with the English language is important.*

## **FORM/USE: PREMODIFIERS, INTENSIFYING**

[B1] Can use premodifiers with indefinite pronouns, often to intensify.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*You can find absolutely anything, whatever you need.*

*I like to wear a T-shirt with jeans almost everywhere I go.*

*Nearly everyone I know sits at a computer all day.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*You can find absolutely anything whatever you need.*

*We spend a lot of time toghether, doing things that both enjoy, and sometimes, doing just nothing.*

*I like to wear T-shirt with jeans almost everywhere I go.*

## **FORM/USE: WITH RELATIVE CLAUSES, FOCUS**

[B2] Can use indefinite pronouns with a relative clause to form complex noun phrases, to give focus.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Something that I like very much is the idea of the classes.*

*Something extra, which is not really pleasant, is their behavior.*

*Something really good about it is that it'd give us some work experience, which we don't have right now.*

*Everything that I believed changed and without any help I managed to write perfectly, according to my teacher.*

*Everyone who can use a computer can use the new products.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Something that I like very much is the idea of the classes.*

*Something extra which is not really pleasant is their behavior.*

*Something really good about it is that it'd give us some work experience, which we don't have right now.*

*Everything that I believed changed and without any help I managed to write perfectly, according to my teacher.*

*Everyone who can use the computer can use the new products.*

### FORM: OBJECT OR COMPLEMENT

[B1] Can use a wide range of indefinite pronouns as objects or complements.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I often watch TV, because my computer is broken and I have nothing to do.*

*? there was nothing on the wall.*

*It's a tennis club and the people there were all strangers for me, I didn't know anyone.*

*When I arrived at his house there wasn't anyone there.*

*He went everywhere in the world!*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I often watch TV, because my computer is broken and I have nothing to do.*

*? there was nothing on the wall.*

*It's a tennis club and the people there were all strangers for me, I didn't know anyone.*

*When I arrived to his house there wasn't anyone there.*

### Comments

There are 59 hits for anyone at A2. They are predominantly used in error meaning 'any one', a single item. It may be lack of spoken data or lack of opportunity to use.

### FORM: SUBJECT

[B1] Can use an increasing range of indefinite pronouns ('something', 'nobody') as subjects, with a singular verb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was so confused that I thought something was happening.*

*Unfortunately something has happened with the airplane's schedule, so I won't be able to arrive at 1.15 pm, as we agreed.*

*So I tried to call for help, but nobody answered.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I was so confused that I thought something was happening.*

*Unfortunately something has happened with the airplane's schedule, so I won't be able to arrive at 1:15 p.m, as we agreed.*

*Everyone liked my suggestions.*

*So I tried to call for help, but nobody answered.*

[B2] Can use the full range of indefinite pronouns as subjects, with a singular verb.



### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*But, nowadays nothing is free, so you have to pay for everything.*

*Her parents had told her everything weeks ago; she had cried and argued, but nothing could change her parents' opinion.*

*Yes it was Christmas, that's why everybody tried to smile.*

*Everywhere is green and clean.*

*When we came back home, everywhere was very untidy.*

*I searched my car to see if anything was missing.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*But, nowadays nothing is free, so you have to pay for everything.*

*Yes it was Christmas, that's why everybody tried to smile and behave as if nothing went wrong.*

*Her parents had told her everything weeks ago, she had cried and discussed, but nothing could change her parents' opinion.*

*Everywhere is green and clean.*

*When we came back at home, everywhere was very untidy, on the floor laid some different things and toys.*

*I searched my car to see if anything was missing.*

### **USE: VAGUE EXPRESSIONS**

[B2] Can use indefinite pronouns in vague expressions to refer to things in a non-specific way.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Is it worth having a nervous breakdown or anything like that?*

*My personal idea to help the environment is to try to plant more trees around the college, for example, in the zone behind the college or somewhere else.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Is it worth having a nervous breakdown or anything like that?*

*My personal idea to help the environment is try to plant more trees on the college, for example, on the zone behind the college or somewhere else.*

### **Comments**

This is a predominantly spoken feature.

## **POSSESSIVE**

### **FORM/USE: WITH 'THAT ? OF'**

[C2] Can use 'that ? of' + possessive pronouns to express an attitude about someone or something, often in humorous or sarcastic contexts.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I could just imagine it, meeting her at her house, her mother asking me to take care of her between puffs of smoke and coughing fits in that hoarse voice of hers.*

*I kept silent when I was introduced to that new girlfriend of his.*

*You can park that precious jeep of yours.*

*I've been looking all over for that bright great-nephew of mine.*

### FORM: 'HERS' AS OBJECT

[B2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'hers', with singular reference, in object positions, and complement positions after 'be' and after prepositions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*At the entrance, the security guard asked for my identity card. Pat gave hers.*

*She didn't remember leaving it there, it wasn't even hers, which is what frightened her the most.*

*But when she gave this suitcase a good look, she realised that it wasn't hers.*

*She saw him on a train running parallel to hers.*

### FORM: 'HERS' AS SUBJECT

[C2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'hers' with singular reference, in subject position.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I put Sophie's pictures in my bag because hers was already packed.*

*[talking about gazpacho, a type of soup] I also recall my father saying to my mother that hers was not as good as my grandmother's.*

*She thought, as she sometimes did, that hers was a drab existence, but that she could do hardly anything to avoid it.*

#### Comments

There is no evidence of 'hers' with plural reference in the CLC.

### FORM: 'HIS'

[C2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'his', with singular and plural reference, in subject and object position, and complement positions after 'be' and after prepositions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Therefore, his was not a happy and normal childhood.*

*He was my confidant and I was his.*

*It was as if she had completely forgotten about the outlines of his face, his hair, all the features that were his.*

*Bob attracts many of his students to the teaching career, which is rather looked down on in a developing poor country like his.*

### FORM: 'OURS' AS OBJECT

[B2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'ours' with singular and plural reference, in object positions, and complement positions after 'be' and after prepositions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Can we rent windsurf boards or should we bring ours with us?*

*[talking about characters in a book] ? when we read about them we think that we are the characters and we live their stories as if they were ours.*

*Aldous Huxley was able to create a new world which is not so different from ours.*

*This road shouldn't be allowed in the middle of a small town like ours.*

### FORM: 'OURS' AS SUBJECT

[B2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'ours', with singular and plural reference, in subject position.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Ours is the only store in this locality which opens at 7.00 am.*

*Ours is a retail company with 5 outlets, dealing in furnishings.*

*In order to persuade them, we would like to show comparisons between our products and the ones from other companies to demonstrate that ours are more effective and efficient.*

[C1] Can use the possessive pronoun 'ours', in subject position.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I hope that other councils will consider improving the cyclists' cycling conditions as ours did.*

*Yes, of course there are much larger gardens in this area, but ours is more than four times as big as the one we had in Holland.*

*What is more, the manager organises excursions to London. Ours was breathtaking. We visited unbelievably interesting museums?*

### **FORM: 'THEIRS' AS OBJECT**

[B2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'theirs', with singular and plural reference, in object positions, and complement positions after 'be' and after prepositions.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I could show them the traditional things of our country and learn theirs.*

*She told him that this baby was theirs.*

*Red Stone are a very big group, you know that I'm a great fan of theirs.*

*I realise that it can be a very interesting experience and I can also improve my foreign language as well as theirs.*

### **FORM: 'THEIRS' AS SUBJECT**

[C2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'theirs', with singular and plural reference, in subject position.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Theirs is a relationship between two members of the privileged classes, who really don't care about the world around (or below) them.*

*Theirs had always been a love-and-hate relationship.*

*Yet, beautiful dreams never last long, and theirs lasted until she had to leave England.*

*When comparing the value and achievements of athletes with doctors or scientists, theirs begin to lack in significance.*

### **FORM: 'YOURS' AS SUBJECT**

[B1] Can use the possessive pronoun 'yours', with singular reference, in subject position.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*We bought it because yours is very old and sometimes stops working.*

*I really needed some extra information, and yours was very useful.*

### **Comments**

There is no evidence of 'yours' with plural reference.

### **FORM: + 'OF OURS'**

[B2] Can use the possessive pronoun 'ours' after noun + 'of'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Finally we went to Venice where we met some friends of ours and spent with them the rest of the holiday.*

*The credit crunch is heavily affecting this region, therefore all retail sales have fallen and many competitors of ours are decreasing their sales too.*

*Paul, a classmate of ours, will be the D.J. and we are thinking of listening to rock music, since Mr. Brown likes it.*

### FORM: + 'OF YOURS'

[B1] Can use the possessive pronoun 'yours' after noun + 'of'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Maybe you can take a friend of yours with you there.*

*I think that it's a very good idea of yours to come to the UK.*

*You can ask some friends of yours to join you.*

### FORM: COMPARATIVE CLAUSES WITH 'MINE', 'YOURS'

[B1] Can use the possessive pronouns 'mine' and 'yours', with singular reference, in comparative clauses after '(not) as ? as'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Hope you have a friend as good as mine!*

*My bedroom is not as big as yours but it is lovely.*

*My town isn't very big, so I think it won't grow as fast as yours.*

*I hope [?] my English becomes as good as yours.*

### FORM: COMPARATIVE CLAUSES WITH 'OURS', 'HERS'

[B2] Can use the possessive pronouns 'hers' and 'ours' in comparative clauses.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I told my mother that your Spanish omelette is better than hers.*

*Lots of changes which may occur during the next fifty years can make us fear that our sons' and grandsons' lives will not be as happy as ours.*

### FORM: OF 'THEIRS', 'HERS', 'HIS'

[C2] Can use the possessive pronouns 'hers', 'theirs' and 'his' after noun + 'of'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was a great admirer of hers.*

*She asked some old friends of hers and she went to the church where the marriage was taking place.*

*My parents invited the father of a friend of theirs who spoke French.*

*Then he showed me a very old diary of his, just for me to have an idea of what to do.*

*He was able to build a very successful business which allowed him and his family to live very well and to travel (a passion of his).*

### GENERAL COMMENT

### Corrected Learner Examples

## Comments

Results with possessive pronouns conflict with EVP. This reflects input vs. output difference in assigning levels. For example 'ours': even though there are plenty of examples for it at A2/B1, even at B1 only a third are correct (146 hits, 45 correct) which means it's not going in at B1. At B2 there are 102 hits and only 44 correct ? at C1 150 hits, 111 correct, C2 103, with 86 correct. On those stats it would go in at C1. NB Important to note that errors with possessive pronouns persist through B levels.

## QUANTITY

### FORM/USE: 'MANY ARE THE' + NOUN, FOR FOCUS

[C2] Can form complex noun phrases using an inverted form 'Many' + 'are' + noun phrase, followed by a relative clause, as a focusing device. ► focus

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Many are the causes which have led us to a better and longer life.*

*Many are the examples of children who hate reading as they believe that it is pointless, but they are not able to judge from a young age.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Many are the causes which have led us to a better and longer life.*

*Many are the examples of children who hate reading as they believe that it is pointless, but they are not able to judge from a young age.*

### FORM: 'A LOT' AND 'MUCH'

[C2] Can use 'a lot' and 'much' as a subject pronouns. ► focus

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*A lot has changed since prehistoric times.*

*A lot depends on your background.*

*Much has been said about the need for nuclear weapons, although after the end of USSR and consequently the end of the cold war, this topic was almost forgotten.*

*Much has been said about quality time, but children don't understand this concept, they only know whether you are there or you are not.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*" A lot has changed since prehistoric times.*

*A lot depends on your background.*

*Much has been said about the need of nuclear weapons, although after the end of URSS and consequently the end of the cold war, this topic was almost forgotten.*

*Much has been said about quality time, but children don't understand this concept, they only know whether you are there or you are not.*

## Comments

Much is used in formal contexts, especially in the phrase 'Much has been said' | A lot is overwhelmingly taught as an adverb of frequency or quantity, or determiner as in a lot of.

### FORM: 'NONE', SUBSTITUTION

[C1] Can use pronouns 'none' to substitute for subject and object pronouns. ► pronouns: substitution

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As for disadvantages, in fact, I see none.*

*As for social life organized by the school, there was none.*

*The costs saved without external consultants would be higher than the costs for this course .*

*Opportunity costs: None.*

*I started learning the language when I was seven. Problems when using English? None.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As for disadvantages, in fact, I see none.*

*As for social life organized by the school there was none.*

*The costs saved without external consultants would be higher than the costs for this course .*

*Opportunity costs: None.*

*I started learning the language when I was seven, just step by step and since the very beginning I felt as I had an axe to grind in the subject. Problems when using English? None.*

### Comments

None on its own mainly occurs as a short response so we imagine it would be higher frequency in spoken data as it needs interaction. There are lots of none of examples (see determiners: quantity) but very few correct examples of None as a pronoun. Lots of error with no-one.

### FORM: MODIFIED

[C1] Can modify 'few' and 'many' with 'very', 'too', 'so' as intensifiers.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was on Thursday that I realized how many children were in the centre. There were too many and the day was extremely tiring.*

*Almost 5000 Greeks died that night, and very few managed to survive.*

*In recent years, the Internet, which used to be a luxury only used by the very few who had access to it, has become a means of exchanging information.*

*Sure, some of the motorists changed to bicycles or to public transport – but far too few.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*It was on Thursday that I realized how many children are in the centre, There were too many and the day was extremely tiring.*

*Almost 5.000 Greeks died this night, and very few managed to survive.*

*In the recent years, Internet, which used to be a luxury only used by the very few who had access to it, has become a means of exchanging information.*

### Comments

Note, 'too many', with 'many' as a pronoun exist at B2 in small numbers and many are not quite correct e.g. 'It is true that many accidents happen every day and the victims are too many.' (Greece; B2 VANTAGE; 1993; Greek; Pass)

### FORM: RELATIVE PRONOUNS

[C1] Can use 'some of', 'many of' to modify relative pronouns in a relative clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The people of his time were amazed every time they saw his new inventions, some of which were enormous.*

*By and large, how we eat is influenced by several factors, some of which have nothing to do with your nationality.*

*I am aware that you have a different view on young people's preferences, but I hope this event could give you an opportunity to see some other aspects of young people, some of whom are very active in sports in our club.*

*Today we continue this tradition by organising lectures and exhibitions, generally open to the public, many of which deal with Hamburg-specific issues.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The people of his time were amazed everytime they saw his new inventions, some of which were enormous.*

*By and large, how we eat is influenced by several factors, some of which have nothing to do with your nationality.*

*I am aware that you have a different view on young people's preferences, but I hope this event could give you an opportunity to see some other aspects of young people, some of whom are very active in sports in our club.*

*Today we continue this tradition by organising lectures and exhibitions, generally open to the public, many of which deal with Hamburg-specific issues.*

### Comments

No results for 'few of which' and 'few of whom' at C1 or C2 in CLC.

### FORM: SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUNS, 'BOTH', 'A FEW', 'ANOTHER'

[B1] Can use 'both', 'a few', 'another' as subject and object pronouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about two types of exercise] Both are going to keep you fit.*

*Both are very good films.*

*About going to the city or to the countryside, I think you'll enjoy both.*

*I am happy to select a few.*

*Well, in my country there are lots of programmes but only a few are interesting.*

*Moving from an area to another is not very simple, but there isn't a problem without a solution.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[talking about two types of exercise] Both are going to keep you fit.*

*Both are very good films.*

*About going to the city or to the countryside, I think you'll enjoy both.*

*I am happy to select a few.*

*Well, in my country there are lots of programmes but only a few are interesting.*

*Even if moving from an area to another is not very simple, but there isn't a problem without solution.*

### FORM: SUBJECT AND OBJECT PRONOUNS, 'EACH', 'SEVERAL', 'NEITHER', 'ENOUGH'

[B2] Can use pronouns 'each', 'either', 'enough', 'neither', 'several' as subject and object pronouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As you could guess, each has a very unique style.*

*I would like to enquire if there will be one group or several depending on level of students?*

*Considering my abilities, there are several that I think you should consider.*

*Comparing the two firms, both of them go some way towards fulfilling our needs, but neither covers all.*

*[talking about toilets] They are very clean and there are enough so you don't have to wait.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As you could guess, each has a very unique style.*

*I would like to enquire if there will be one group or several depending on level of students?*

*Considering my abilities, there are several that I think you should consider.*

*Comparing the two firms, both of them go some way fulfilling our needs, but neither covers all.*

*[talking about toilets] They are very clean and there are enough so you don't have to wait.*

### Comments

The standalone subject and object forms of these pronouns are very low frequency both in the learner and native speaker corpora. There are only three examples of neither as a pronoun at this level, and all are business English examples. This may be a data issue.

### FORM: WITH 'OF' + OBJECT PRONOUN

[B1] Can use an increasing range of pronouns ('some', 'a few', 'any', 'each') with 'of' followed by an object pronoun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Of course some of them are closer than others but I love them all.*

*I have shot many photos with my new digital camera and I will send some of them by e-mail for you.*

*Children my age are playing too long with their computers.... But only a few of them.*

*So travelling is not at all a problem for any of us.*

*Please ensure each of them has a computer, and they can practise for at least half an hour after class.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Of course some of them are closer than others but I love them all.*

*I have shot many photos with my new digital camera and I will send some of them by e-mail for you.*

*But the children from my age are playing too long with their computers .... But only a few of them.*

*So travelling is not at all a problem for any of us.*

*We all agreed to see Resident Evil 2 because none of us has seen it and we all like action movies.*

*Please ensure each of them has a computer, and they can practise at least half hour after class.*

### Comments

Quite a few of these appear in this construction (pronoun + 'of' + object) before they appear as standalone pronouns, particularly in the construction 'with' + 'of them'



[B2] Can use a wide range of pronouns ('neither', 'either', 'none') with 'of' followed by an object pronoun.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Stella and her boyfriend, ... lived with Chuck at the same house, but neither of them knew that Chuck had passed a very complicated exam to be a spy for the United States.*

*Neither of us could foresee any possible rise or fall in the price of wheat.*

*How about spending the last couple of days doing some activities like skiing, horse riding and rafting. If you are interested in either of them, have a go.*

*We didn't know what they wanted. and none of us spoke any Italian.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*How about spending the last couple of days doing some activities like skiing, hourse riding and raffting. They are great fun, especially raffting is BRILLIANT! If you are interested in either of them, have a go.*

#### **USE: FORMAL**

[C1] Can use 'few', 'many', 'most', 'others' to refer to people in formal written contexts, often reports or surveys.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Few people stop to think about what they are really doing, and few are motivated to work at all.*

*Few denied that it was one of the most thrilling and fascinating activities we tried the whole week.*

*Many express their satisfaction and claim to have acquired a great number of new skills.*

*Many say that extreme sports attract only those who are addicted to adrenaline or those who have nothing to lose.*

*Some of the students have a few comments. Most were concerned with the planning of the timetable and I hope there may be some changes this year.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Few people stop to think about what they are really doing, and few are motivated to work at all.*

*Few denied that it was one of the most thrilling and fascinating activities we tried the whole week.*

*Many express their satisfaction and claim to have acquired a great number of new skills which are advantageous for the work they are doing.*

*Many say that extreme sports attract only those who are adicted to adrenaline or those who have nothing to lose.*

*Some of the students have a few comments and they hoped that they can reach you. Most were concerned with the planning of the timetable and I hope there may be some changes this year.*

*All over the world each day many people take their driving test. Their motivation can be different. Most desire to be more mobile an free of relying on public transport.*

## RECIPROCAL

### FORM/USE: 'ONE ANOTHER', FORMAL

[B2] Can use 'one another' as the object of a verb or complement of a preposition to talk about the mutual behaviour of two or more people, often in formal contexts.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I also thought to create a studying space where students, staff and visitors can meet one another.*

*Since we last saw one another many things have happened, but I must admit I have never enjoyed myself again the way I did when I was with you.*

*Perhaps it will help me understand what my two dogs say to one another.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I also thought to create a studying space where students, staff and visitors can meet one another.*

*Since we last saw one another many things have happened, but I must admit I have never enjoyed myself again, the way I did when I was with you.*

*Perhaps it will help me understand what my two dogs say to one another.*

### FORM: 'EACH ... THE OTHER(S)', AS OBJECT

[C2] Can use 'each' (+ noun or pronoun) as subject followed by 'the other(s)' as object, to refer to two related things. ► pronouns: quantity

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Each of them admires the other's intelligence.*

*As regards other aspects of my upbringing my parents taught me the importance of having all the family together, each one helping the others, each one loving the others.*

#### Comments

This is a relatively low frequency form; here we see 'the other' being used as a pronoun and as a determiner (the other's intelligence).

### FORM: 'EACH ...' + 'THE OTHER(S)', AS COMPLEMENT

[C1] Can use 'each' (+ noun or pronoun) as subject followed by 'the other(s)' a complement of a preposition, to refer to two related things. ► pronouns: quantity

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Each person could be a help to the other.*

*They all seem to mean exactly the same but if you study them more carefully, you realize that each of them differs from the others in tiny details that can be relevant.*

*Generally speaking, each individual is different from the others.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Each person could be a help to the other.*

*They all seem to mean exactly the same but if you study them more carefully you realize that each of them differs from the others in tiny details that can be relevant.*

*Generally speaking, each individual is different from the others.*

## FORM: 'EACH OTHER'

[B1] Can use 'each other' as the object of a verb or complement of a preposition to talk about the mutual behaviour of two or more people.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We go to the same school so we see each other every day.*

*First, we had to introduce each other by saying where we come from, which kind of job we are doing here, why we want to learn English.*

*He said the coach is really nice and that the first players get on well with each other.*

*We didn't use to talk to each other, but one day we started to talk and I discovered she was extremely friendly and nice.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We go to the same school so we see each other everyday.*

*At first, we had to introduce each other by telling where we come from, which kind of job we are doing here, why we want to learn English.*

*He said the coach is really nice and that the first players get on well with each other.*

*We didn't use to talk to each other, but ? one day we started to talk and I discovered she was extremely friendly and nice.*

## REFLEXIVE

### FORM/USE: 'BY' + PLURAL

[B2] Can use plural reflexive pronouns with 'by' to mean alone, without any help.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*A friend of mine and I are planning to spend a short holiday by ourselves.*

*There are many things to say, but I think that you will find these by yourselves.*

*Then suddenly, the lights started clicking on and off, the windows opened by themselves.*

### Comments

NB it is likely that the fact that there is little evidence of plural reflexive pronouns at B1 may be a result of task effect or lack of opportunity of use.

### FORM/USE: 'BY' + SINGULAR

[B1] Can use the singular reflexive pronouns 'myself', 'yourself', 'himself' and 'herself' with 'by' to mean alone, without any help.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I will ask my friends from the class and I will study by myself.*

*You can do some exercise by yourself.*

*He tried to open it by himself.*

*She decided to find him by herself.*

### FORM: 'BY ITSELF'

[B2] Can use the reflexive pronoun 'itself' with 'by' to mean alone or without any help.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If an animal is kept by itself, with no one to keep it company, it will get lonely and very sad.*

*Suddenly, the window opened by itself and the room filled with cold air.*

**FORM: PLURAL, AFTER PREPOSITIONS**

[B2] Can use plural reflexive pronouns after prepositions where the object of the preposition is the same as the subject of the verb.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*Doing sports is an excellent way to relax and it can help us to feel good about ourselves.  
The staff didn't have enough time for themselves.*

**FORM: SAME SUBJECT AND OBJECT, PLURAL**

[B2] Can use plural reflexive pronouns to refer to actions where the subject and object of the verb are the same.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*In this way we will be able to enjoy ourselves even if this is not well-paid work.  
In the afternoons, you'll be able to visit the archaeological sites and in the evening you can entertain yourselves by dancing or listening to music in our city clubs.  
But adults often ask themselves the question – isn't it cruel to keep animals in zoos?*

**FORM: SAME SUBJECT AND OBJECT, SINGULAR**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of singular reflexive pronouns with an increasing range of verbs to refer to actions where the subject and object of the verb are the same.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I decided to talk to him and introduce myself.  
First you should ask yourself if you have enough money for the journey.  
Lisa told herself to be strong and hoped everything would be alright.  
I was really surprised when I read the e-mail. It was from someone who calls himself the black shadow.*

**FORM: SINGULAR, AFTER PREPOSITIONS**

[B1] Can use the singular reflexive pronouns 'myself', 'yourself', 'himself' and 'herself' after prepositions where the object of the preposition is the same as the subject of the verb.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*He told me about himself and how he started playing the guitar.  
Now she was very proud of herself.*

**USE: 'IN ITSELF', INTENSIFYING**

[B2] Can use the fixed expression 'in itself' as an intensifier .

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*I would also spend much more quality time with my family as a whole, which is quite important in itself.  
The architecture in itself is beautiful, but the garden is very wonderful, too.  
To begin with, a car, in my opinion, can't be harmful in itself. The trouble is that, nowadays, very fast cars are put on the market and we never know if they are going to be driven by wise people or, instead, by crazy or dreadful drivers.*

**USE: 'ITSELF', FOR EMPHASIS**

[B2] Can use the singular pronoun 'itself' for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In my opinion, the main characters do not have to be liked by readers but the story itself must be good and interesting to be successful.*

*The building itself looks splendid and beautiful.*

### USE: 'YOURSELVES', FOR POLITENESS

[B2] Can use the plural reflexive pronoun 'yourselves' for politeness.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Dear Sir/Madam, I am writing to you in response to the advertisement published by yourselves in "the Traveller" regarding The Trip of a Lifetime.*

*The question you asked drives me back to my early life. My childhood. Like yourselves I am also living in a busy town, in a busy street. But when I was a little kid I was with my grand parents in Kandy.*

*Also, it is a great opportunity to improve my sailing skills as training will be provided by yourselves.*

### USE: DISCOURSE MARKERS

[C2] Can use 'as for myself' as a discourse marker to introduce or focus on a personal opinion.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As for myself, as you can clearly see from my account of this musical event, music still means an awful lot to me, and most probably allways will.*

*As for myself I like taking responsibilities.*

*As for myself, I grew up during the "internet era", the years when it was spreading to average peoples homes and therefore I can still remember life without it.*

### USE: PLURAL, FOR EMPHASIS

[B2] Can use plural reflexive pronouns for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The food is not very good, but sometimes we can prepare something to eat ourselves.*

*They patiently explained to me my job even though they were fairly busy themselves.*

*Cars themselves are never dangerous. It depends on us, actually.*

### USE: SINGULAR, FOR EMPHASIS

[B1] Can use the singular reflexive pronouns 'myself', 'yourself', 'himself' and 'herself' for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The best solution will be if you decide yourself what to do.*

*I think it was the director himself who guided the actress through our wonderful school gardens to film the opening scene there.*

*The food was delicious, especially the cake, which Sandra had cooked herself.*

## SUBJECT/ OBJECT

### FORM/USE: (SUBJECT) 'IT' + PASSIVE

[C1] Can use 'it' with the passive voice where the subject is unknown or unimportant, often in formal contexts. ► passives

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was considered to be the most important thing to supply every computer with Internet and E-mail access*

*It is hoped that this report will help the club to improve and meet the needs of the whole school.*

*Firstly it was highlighted that so many people take advantage of the park, but our survey clearly contradicts this view.*

### Comments

All the evidence for this use of 'it' + passive at B2 is with the BECV exam. Other uses of the passive with it at FCE are with a known subject. At C1 there is much more evidence in non-business exams for this use.

### FORM: (OBJECT) USING 'IT' TO INTRODUCE

[B2] Can use 'it' as an object with 'make' to introduce something the speaker or writer is going to refer to.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*This shyness makes it hard for me to speak in public, or even to go out with my friends as often as I should.*

*Other retail companies with cheaper prices and lots of discounts make it impossible for us to do business.*

### FORM: (SUBJECT) 'ONE'

[B2] Can use 'one' as a generic personal pronoun in the subject position to mean people in general. ► generic pronouns

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If one doesn't live close enough to walk to work, one can choose to get there by bicycle or by car.*

### FORM: (SUBJECT) CLEFT CONSTRUCTIONS WITH 'IT'

[C2] Can form a cleft construction beginning with 'it' to emphasise the subject of the main clause. ► clauses

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It was my father who took all this away from me.*

### FORM: (SUBJECT) ELLIPSIS

[B2] Can leave out the subject pronoun with a limited range of verbs, in informal contexts. ► ellipsis

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Must rush now because I have to go out with Paul.*

*Sounds great.*

*Got to go now.*

*Can't wait to hear about your exam.*

### FORM: (SUBJECT) EMPTY 'IT'

[B2] Can use dummy 'it' with 'appears', 'feels', 'looks' and 'seems'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*When you watch a film, it seems to be that you are inside it, and you are a character in it.  
? your company has carried out a full investigation on the matter and it appears that the  
disappearance was not the result of criminal activity. (Portugal; B2 VANTAGE; 2008);  
It appears that there was an error with the older computer system.*

### FORM: (SUBJECT) USING 'IT' TO INTRODUCE

[B1] Can use dummy 'it' as a subject to introduce something the speaker or writer is going to refer to.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is best to spend your time in the countryside.  
It's boring to be at home when you have a lot of free time.  
It's normal that your parents want you to go with them.*

## SUBSTITUTION, ONE, ONES, NONE

### FORM/USE: 'THE ONE(S) THAT', FOR FOCUS

[C2] Can use 'The one(s) that' + clause in subject position, for focus. ► focus

### Corrected Learner Examples

*The one that impressed me a lot is the Chinese Lunar New Year Carnival which was held in  
Hong Kong in January this year.  
The one that I think will have permanent results is the raising of the financial standard of all  
these countries.  
The ones that he preferred were those where his imagination could fly away to other places  
and times, and where he could live the life of other people.  
The ones that wear clothes made by their mothers never seem to ask for much attention.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The one that impressed me a lot is the Chinese Lunar New Year Carnival which was held in  
Hong Kong in January this year.  
The one that I think will have permanent results is the raise of the financial standard of all  
these countries.  
The ones that he preferred were those where his imagination could fly away to other places and  
times, and where he could live the life of other people.  
The ones that wear clothes made by their mothers never seem to ask much attention.*

### FORM/USE: POSTMODIFYING, SPECIFYING

[B1] Can use 'the ones' with a complement, to refer to something specific.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Weddings in our country? Well, they're pretty different from the ones in England.  
Evil people, like the ones who did this, should die, or at least go to prison.  
The products we received were not exactly the ones we ordered.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Weddings in our country? Well, they're pretty diffrent from the ones in England.  
Evil people, like the ones who did this should die, or at least go to prison.  
Products we received were not exactly the ones we ordered.*

## FORM/USE: PREMODIFIER + 'ONES', GENERAL REFERENCE

[B1] Can use premodifiers with 'ones', to refer to something in general.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Our computers are out-dated and slow. I think we should replace them with new ones.  
Large schools are usually better than small ones, because they offer more interesting activities.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Our computers are out-dated and slow. I think we should replace them with new ones.  
Large schools are usually better than small ones, because they offer more interesting activities.*

## FORM: 'NONE'

[C1] Can use 'none' as a pronoun. ► determiners: quantity ► pronouns: quantity

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Then I searched for a Coca-Cola, but I found none.  
Although I was really disappointed, I managed to keep the presence of mind and think more carefully and calmly. The result? None!  
We expected a social programme but there was none.  
The odd thing about snowboarding in Russia ... is that there are very few mountains. In fact, there are none.  
The costs saved without external consultants would be higher than the costs for this course.  
Opportunity costs: None.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The costs saved without external consultants would be higher than the costs for this course .  
Opportunity costs: None.*

### Comments

NB predominantly a spoken structure. No evidence of this use before C1.

## FORM: 'ONES'

[B1] Can use 'ones' as a pronoun to substitute for plural nouns which have already been mentioned or are obvious from the context.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*My pillows are getting old and I need new ones.  
To tell the truth, I prefer large schools to small ones.  
We also need new armchairs, because a lot of the old ones are broken.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*My pillows are getting old and I need new ones.  
To tell the truth, I prefer large schools to small ones.  
We also need new arm chairs, because a lot of the old ones are broken.*

## FORM: 'THESE ONES', 'THOSE ONES'

[B2] Can use 'these ones', 'those ones' as a substitute for plural countable nouns which have already been mentioned or are obvious from the context.



### Corrected Learner Examples

*This is only the beginning; there are a lot of things that should be done, but let's just start with these ones.*

*Beside those ones, there's also an equal number of individuals who get crippled for life.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*This is only the beginning; there are a lot of things that should be done, but let's just start with these ones.*

*Beside those ones, there's also an equal number of individuals who get crippled for life.*

### Comments

NB predominantly a spoken structure

## FORM: 'THIS ONE', 'THAT ONE'

[B1] Can use 'this one', 'that one' to refer to a singular countable noun. ► pronouns: demonstratives

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I met many old friends there, because I was in another judo club before this one and my friends and I left the old one to join the 1.JCF, because we heard that this one is the best in the whole of Frankfurt.*

*I'm thinking about buying a new desk because this one is very old.*

*I choose that one, because it is a very good and quiet place.*

*This is the only part of "Harry Potter" movies which I don't have, and it's my favourite, so I'm going to buy that one.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I met many old friends there, because I was in another judo club before this one and my friends and I left the old one to join the 1.JCF, because we heard that this one is the best in whole Frankfurt.*

*I'm thinking about to buy a new desk because this one is very old ?*

### Comments

This use of 'this one' and 'these ones' is very low frequency in written data. Need to check spoken data for other pointing uses and short answers.

## FORM: 'WHICH ONE'

[B1] Can use 'one' after 'which' in indirect questions to refer to one of two or more options.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you ask me which one I would choose, I would first go camping and then to Disneyland in Paris.*

*First of all, you should think of all the advantages and disadvantages of each option and if you want, you can write them on a piece of paper. This way you see which one is the best.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you ask me which one I would chose, I would first go on camping and then to Disneyland in Paris.*

*First of all, you should think of all the advantages and disadvantages of each option and if you want you can write them on a piece of paper. This way you see which one is the best.*

## FORM: PRE-MODIFYING

[B1] Can use determiners + premodifiers + 'ones'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We should buy some new copiers and some new faxes because the old ones are very slow, and one copier is already broken.*

*I have seen many programs recently, but the ones that I liked best are the funny ones, and the science-fiction ones, because I like things that are unreal.*

*I also like watching films on Friday nights, there are some good ones on the first channel.*

*I've bought five new t-shirts, because I don't like my old ones anymore.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We should buy some new copiers and some new faxes because the old ones are very slowly and one copier is already broken down.*

*I had seen many programs recently, but the ones that I liked best, are the funny ones, and the science-fiction ones, because I like the things that are unreal.*

*I also like watching films on Friday nights, thee are some good ones on the first channel.*

*I've bought five new t-shirts, because I don't like my old ones anymore.*

## QUESTIONS

### ALTERNATIVES

#### FORM/USE: 'OR NOT'

[B1] Can form alternative questions using 'or not' to substitute for a clause, sometimes to express annoyance or impatience.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*For a few seconds he was quiet. I couldn't wait, I asked nervously about his exam, did he pass or not?*

*Do you want to do that or not?*

*Do you agree with me or not?*

*Will you be there till that time or not?*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*First a few seconds he was quiet, I couldn't wait, I asked nervously what about his exam, did he pass or not?*

*Do you want to do that or not?*

*Do you agree with me or not?*

*Will you be there till that time or not?*

#### Comments

In spoken language the 'or not' may have stronger pragmatic force.

#### FORM/USE: 'OR SOMETHING ELSE', VAGUE

[B1] Can form alternative question with 'or something else' as the second alternative to a noun phrase, to refer to something non-specific.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Shall we buy him a book, a CD or something else?*

*Poetry, history or something else?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Shall we buy him a book, a CD or something else?*

*Poetry, history or something else?*

### **Comments**

3 examples of 'or anything else' at B2. Spoken data needed.

## **FORM/USE: ELLIPTED MODAL, HEDGING**

[C1] Can form alternative questions with two clauses and ellipsis in the second clause, often as a hedging device.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Maybe you could hand out toys or show a movie?*

*Maybe you will be able to arrange another excursion this year or provide more time there?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Maybe you could hand out toys or show a movie?*

*Maybe you will be able to arrange another excursion this year or provide more time there?*

## **FORM/USE: STRONG ALTERNATIVE**

[C1] Can form alternative questions using an extreme alternative to give greater pragmatic force.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Is this new industry a blessing for the region or the exact opposite?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Is this new industry a blessing for the region or the exact opposite?*

### **Comments**

Very low frequency.

## **FORM: CLAUSE + CLAUSE**

[B1] Can form alternative questions with two clauses combined with 'or'.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Are you still with him or did you two break up?*

*Should I go there and talk to her or should I stay here?*

*What do you think about going for walks or jogging in your breaks?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Are you still with him or did you two break up?*

*Should I go there and talk to her or should I stay there?*

*What do you think about going for walks or jogging in your breaks?*

### **Comments**

Note that the main verb is understood in the fourth example.

## FORM: ELLIPSIS

[C2] Can form alternative questions with two or more clauses and ellipsis in the second or third clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Is it not better to take the television away or stop them going to the cinema?  
Do you enjoy reading, find it a waste of time or have an indifferent attitude to it?  
Is he going to give it back to me or show it to everybody?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Is it not better to take the television away or stop them going to the cinema?  
Do you enjoy reading, find it a waste of time or have an indifferent attitude to it?  
Is he going to give it back to me or show it to every body?*

## FORM: PHRASE + PHRASE

[B1] Can form alternative questions with two phrases combined with 'or'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Is this area in the city or in the countryside?  
Do you feel more sympathy for your friends or your parents?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Is this area in the city or in the countryside?  
Do you feel more sympathy for your friends or your parents?*

### Comments

There are not many examples of these forms. Spoken data needed for a fuller picture.

## TAGS

### FORM/USE: 'RIGHT' AS AN INFORMAL TAG

[B1] Can use 'right' as a tag in informal contexts.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You are 14 years old, right?  
I think you asked if I liked shopping for clothes, right?  
You asked me for some help, right?  
They're black, right?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You are 14 years old, right?  
I think you asked if I liked shopping for clothes, right?  
You asked me for some help, right?  
They're black, right?*

### Comments

Only two instances of 'yeah?' as an informal tag at B1 and one at B2. This is more a function of the data being from a written exam.

### FORM/USE: TAGS WITH IMPERATIVES AS SOFTENERS

[B2] Can use an affirmative or negative tag after an imperative clause to soften the imperative.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Think about it, will you?*

*Go to the Lake Frene route, will you?*

*Let's check together, shall we?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Think about it, will you?*

*Go to the Lake Frene route, will you?*

*Let's check together, shall we?*

### **Comments**

The tag verb is most commonly 'will' but we can also use 'would', 'could', 'can' and 'won't'.

Learner data is limited to 'will' and 'shall' in this context but again, this is written data so this is not surprising.

## **FORM: AFFIRMATIVE MAIN CLAUSES + AFFIRMATIVE QUESTION TAGS**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of affirmative tags with affirmative clauses.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Your boyfriend is also 16, is he?*

*You bought new black clothes, did you?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Your boyfriend is also 16, is he?*

*You bought new black clothes, did you?*

### **Comments**

Not surprisingly, these are not as common, given that it is written data.

## **FORM: AFFIRMATIVE MAIN CLAUSES + NEGATIVE QUESTION TAGS**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of 'be', 'do', 'have' and modal verb tags with negative main clauses.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*And so you're moving to a different area, aren't you?*

*You love books, don't you?*

*It sounds peaceful, doesn't it?*

*We've arranged to meet at 12, haven't we?*

*I think it would be fantastic, wouldn't it?*

*When you come back, we should rent some movies, shouldn't we?*

*You'll see the programme on the 23rd of August, won't you?*

*We could go on holiday together, couldn't we?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*And so you're moving to a different area, aren't you?*

*You love books, don't you?*

*It sounds peaceful, doesn't it?*

*We've arranged to meet at 12, haven't we?*

*I think it would be fantastic, wouldn't it?*

*When you come back, we should rent some movies, shouldn't we?*

*You'll see the programme on the 23rd of August, won't you?*

*We could go on holiday together, couldn't we?*

### FORM: NEGATIVE MAIN CLAUSES + AFFIRMATIVE QUESTION TAGS

[B1] Can use an increasing range of affirmative 'be', 'do' and 'have' tags with negative main clauses.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I mean, your parents don't like discos, do they?*

*Doesn't sound interesting, does it?*

*He is not important, is he?*

*That isn't normal, is it?*

*You haven't been to my house before, have you?*

*We haven't met each other for about 1 year, have we?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I mean, your parents don't like discos, do they?*

*Doesn't sound interesting, does it?*

*he is not important, is he?*

*That isn't normal, is it?*

*You haven't been to my house before, have you?*

*We haven't met each other [FOR] about 1 year, have we?*

### Comments

Only one correct example at B1 of a modal verb affirmative tag: 'That couldn't be true, could it?' (Germany; B1 THRESHOLD; 2008; German; Pass)

### FORM: TAGS WITH 'THERE' + 'BE'

[C1] Can use affirmative and negative forms of question tags with 'there' + 'be'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*As you put it that way, there isn't much of a difference with our time, is there?*

*But there is always something you can improve, isn't there?*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*As you put it that way, there isn't much of a difference with our time, is there ?*

*But there is always something you can improve , isn't there ?*

### Comments

We suspect that spoken data would show this form being used at lower levels, as they can use 'there + be' at A1 and A2 levels.

## WH-

### FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH MAIN VERBS

[B2] Can use 'wh-'words + the negative form of auxiliary 'do' + subject + main verb to form 'wh-'questions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*You still have this agonising headache. Why don't you go to your doctor?  
Why didn't you check with the ticket office first before you wrote your article?  
Why didn't you say something about it?  
Why haven't you told me before?*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You still have this agonising headache. Why don't you go to your doctor?  
Why didn't you check with the ticket office first before you wrote your article?  
Why didn't you say something about it?  
Why haven't you told me before?*

#### Comments

Examples are restricted to 'wh'- questions with 'why'. Spoken data needed.

### FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH MODALS

[B1] Can use 'wh-'words + the negative form of modal verbs + subject + main verb to form 'wh-'questions.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Why can't you do both things?  
Why couldn't I control myself?*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Why can't you do both things?  
Why couldn't I control myself?*

#### Comments

These are very low frequency and only 'why' examples. There are some pragmatic errors in examples with other forms, for example: 'This weekend I'm totally free, so why won't we see on Saturday?' (Italy; B1 THRESHOLD; 2008; Italian; Pass)

### USE: FOCUS

[C1] Can use 'wh-'questions as a focusing device, often in a narrative or argument.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Nevertheless, we still give presents because we really want to. You can recognize them normally very fast! They are the ones which are unexpected and made with lots of love. So what makes a good present? From my point of view, the best presents are personal and fitted to the individual.*

*The other very serious problem in connection with cars is pollution, which is the cause of more diseases and problems than we realise at the moment. But what are the alternatives? Berlin has a well-structured and functioning subway?*

*Some of them are coin operated but some are magnetic-card operated. Use these coin-operated ones because to call from the other ones, you should buy a magnetic card, which is only possible in post offices. What else can I tell you? If you want anything to drink or to eat after your arrival, there are restaurants at the airport.*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Nevertheless, we still give presents because we really want to. You can recognize them normally very fast! They are the ones which are unexpected and made with lots of love. So what makes a good present? In my point of view, the best presents are personal and fit to the individual.*

*The other very serious problem in connection with cars is pollution which is the cause for much more diseases and problems than we realise at the moment. But what are the alternatives? Berlin has a well structured and functioning subway*

*Some of them are coined-operated but some are magnetic card operated. Use rather these coined-operated ones because to call from the other ones you should buy a magnetic card what is only possible in post officies. What else can I tell you? If you want anything to drink or to eat after your arrival there are restaurants at the airport.*

## **YES/NO**

### **FORM/USE: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH 'NOT', EMPHASIS**

[C2] Can form negative questions with uncontracted 'not' to emphasise a point in an argument.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Do we not want our children to be as happy as possible?*

*Is it not too easy to put the blame systematically on our education?*

*Is it not possible to have this, though maybe on a smaller scale, in our everyday living right where we spend the majority of our time on earth?*

*Are they not aware of the negative effects the use of cars has on cities?*

*Can it not, sometimes, be harmful to the world?*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Do we not want our children to be as happy as possible?*

*Is it not too easy to put the blame systematically on our education?*

*Is it not possible to have this, though maybe on a smaller scale, in our everyday living right where we spend the majority of our time on earth?*

*Are they not aware of the negative effects the use of cars have on cities?*

*Can it not, sometimes, be harmful to the world?*

### **FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS MODAL VERBS**

[B1] Can use modal verbs + 'not' + subject + main verb to form 'yes/no' questions.



### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Wouldn't you like to come?*

*I'm going to a picnic next Saturday with my parents, won't you come with us?*

*Can't you make both?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Wouldn't you like to come?*

*I'm going to a picnic next Saturday with my parents, won't you come with us?*

*Can't you make both?*

### **Comments**

Note these are low frequency both in the learner data and in the BNC. Some of those found at B1 are syntactically correct but not always the most pragmatically appropriate (e.g. 'Now I go to gymnastics two hours a week. Wouldn't you like that?')

## **FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH 'BE'**

[B1] Can use main verb 'be' + 'n?t' to form negative 'yes/no' questions.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Aren't you excited about it?*

*Isn't he sweet?*

*[talking about a cottage] Isn't it in the mountains?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Aren't you excited about it?*

*Isn't he sweet?*

*[talking about a cottage] Isn't it in the mountains?*

## **FORM: NEGATIVE QUESTIONS, AUXILIARY VERBS**

[B1] Can use auxiliary 'do' and 'have' + 'n?t' + subject + main verb to form negative 'yes/no' questions.

### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Don't you think so?*

*Don't you like any programmes?*

*Don't you think she would be happy?*

*Don't you know me?*

*Haven't you seen it yet?*

*Haven't they got their own style?*

### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Don't you think so?*

*Don't you like any programmes?*

*Don't you think she would be happy?*

*Don't you know me?*

*Haven't you seen it yet?*

*Haven't they got their own style?*

### Comments

Note there are few instances of 'have' negative questions in the learner corpus but this is also reflected in the native speaker data (cf. BNC).||There are no instances of auxiliary be with negative questions, e.g. 'Aren't you coming with us?'

### USE: SEEKING AGREEMENT

[B1] Can use negative 'yes/no' questions to involve the listener or reader by seeking agreement.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Finally two days ago I found it in my pocket! It's funny! Don't you think?*

*They're filming a part of Harry Potter at our school, because our main building is very old. Isn't that great?*

*You can even just relax and sunbathe while you drink a nice, cold lemonade. Wouldn't that be amazing?*

*While we were there, there was also a concert and I got to see Rihanna and Chris Brown! Isn't that awesome?*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Finally two days ago I found it in my poket! It's funny! Don't you think?*

*They're filming a part of Harry Potter at our school, because our main-building is very old. Isn't that great?*

*You can even just relax and sunbathe while you drink a nice, cold lemonade. Wouldn't that be amazing?*

*While we were there, there was also a concert and I got to see Rihanna and Chris Brown! Isn't that awesome?*

### Comments

Note to check for this in spoken language data when available as it should be more prevalent and may emerge at a lower level.

## REPORTED SPEECH

### REPORTED SPEECH

#### FORM/USE: 'WONDER', REPORTED THOUGHT

[B1] Can report thought using 'wonder' + 'wh-'word + clause, with a tense shift where relevant.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I always had good times with her and was very impatient to read this letter: I wondered what she had written.*

*I really wondered who he was, but I was embrassed to look at him.*

#### FORM/USE: CITATION, PRESENT SIMPLE

[B2] Can use the present simple form of the reporting verb to report information from a written source and a present tense verb in the reported clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*First of all, your advertisement says that you have got two great nights in a hotel for us.*

*It says you are asking for people to help in a summer camp for foreign school children.*

*Firstly, your advertisement tells us that hotel has two great nights in a wonderful 3-star hotel*

*The guidebook says that we can get there by train from London.*

### FORM/USE: REPORTING VERBS, PAST CONTINUOUS

[B2] Can use the past continuous of the reporting verb to report mental processes, with a finite or non-finite 'wh-'clause in the reported clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I was wondering why I failed.*

*So, he was wondering why we didn't have our letters.*

*I was thinking which of the two would be more interesting, and I prefer to go to "Can Animals Speak", since I love them and I have two. So, I want to know how to communicate with them.*

*We were wondering what had happened for a few minutes but then we realised that there had been a power cut.*

*While he was thinking how to reply, Jenny took his hand and led him to the school.*

### Comments

The development at C levels is to do with lexical growth rather than grammatical complexity. 'Say' and 'tell' dominate reported speech use in CLC at all levels. Complementation patterns after reporting verbs are covered in Verbs

### FORM/USE: TEMPORAL SHIFTS, FUTURE

[B1] Can report speech about events in the future with and without backshifts for words relating to time.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*At the airport they told him to come the next morning.*

*The trainer was impressed and said that if I play next time as well as this time, I'll be the 'pointing guard' in the team.*

*The letter said that he is coming home next month.*

*Her husband told me that the following day they would return to Germany so that was the last time I saw Sara.*

### FORM/USE: TEMPORAL SHIFTS, PAST

[B2] Can report speech about events in the past with backshifts for tenses and words relating to time.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She had told me the previous day that she had something important to tell me.*

*We met Daisy at school on the following day and we told her that the previous day we had been at her house; her grandfather had told us that unluckily she wasn't at home.*

*My boss had told me the previous day that an important customer was going to visit the company in the morning.*

*I had told my friends the day before that I expected to get an A!*

### FORM: DIRECT SPEECH, REPORTING CLAUSE, END POSITION

[B1] Can report speech and thought directly using the reporting verb after the reporting clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*?Excuse me Sir, but you forgot your mobile phone," she said.*

*"I must take it to the police station," she thought.*

*"Yes of course," she answered.*

*?What have I done?" I thought.*

*?What should I do?? she asked herself.*

*"But where is everybody? Am I alone?" I asked.*

*"What's your name?" he asked.*

### FORM: DIRECT SPEECH, REPORTING CLAUSE, INITIAL POSITION

[B1] Can report speech and thought directly, using the reporting verb before the reporting clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He felt like a worm too and he said to me: "I'm sorry I'm not a good friend".*

*Maria answered "Yes!?"*

*He answered: "Come with me".*

*Then I thought: "I can't stay in prison".*

*He asked "Are you Clarice?" I answered yes and then he told me that he was my father.*

*She asked me "How about we join the club?"*

*She thought: "Should I go to the police or should I go back??"*

*I thought: "Either I talk to her now or I won't be able to talk to her anytime!?"*

### Comments

While there are 1,499 occurrences of 'said' + ?...? at B1 many are not punctuated correctly.

Note that punctuation conventions vary in British English and American English.

### FORM: DIRECT SPEECH, REPORTING CLAUSE, INVERTED SUBJECT

[B2] Can report speech directly inverting the subject and verb in the reporting clause where the subject is a proper noun or noun phrase.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*"I was astonished when I saw them standing there", said John.*

*"Who are you?" asked Peter.*

*"Would you mind lending me a part of your newspaper?" said a whispering voice.*

*What do you think about this? said the Inspector to the policeman.*

### Comments

This is a low frequency form in the CLC. There are examples of verb + subject ('said Maria', 'said Lisa') at B1 too but they are very task skewed.

### FORM: DIRECT SPEECH, REPORTING CLAUSE, MID POSITION

[B2] Can report speech and thought directly using the reporting verb in the mid position of the reported clause.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*"No problem", I thought, "there is only one person".*

*"We have come together", this man said, "to celebrate our annual meeting and to call our master's ghost tonight!?"*

*"No problem", I thought, "there is only one person".*

*"Forgive me, sweetheart", he said, "I will never leave you alone again.?"*

### Comments

There is increased accuracy of punctuation use at B2. Note that punctuation conventions vary in British English and American English.

### FORM: MODIFICATION, REPORTING VERB + ADVERB

[B2] Can modify the reporting verb with an adverb.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*"So this is a real cow, mom?" she asked doubtfully.*

*"A hundred dollars for one day. Is that a deal?" her husband said forcefully.*

*"Come on, what's wrong?" Bella asked curiously.*

*"Put that light out!" I shouted calmly.*

### Comments

Note that when the reporting verb is modified by an adverb, it typically comes after the direct speech. This is also the case in expert speaker data in the CEC, where the reporting verb + adverb most commonly occurs in the middle or after the reported clause. It is far less common before the clause.

### FORM: REPORTED 'WH-' QUESTIONS

[B1] Can report 'wh-' questions using a reporting verb + 'wh-' word + clause, with a change of pronoun and tense shift where relevant.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I asked why she was here.*

*I phoned and asked what sports we could play in this club.*

*When we asked why they were filming our school, they said they were looking for a location where they could film some boys and girls leaving the school and so they filmed us!*

*He saw a guy sat there so he sat next to him and asked where the football players were.*

*They filmed it and interviewed a few pupils about what they think about the new swimming pool in the gym and I asked when it would be on TV.*

### FORM: REPORTED 'YES-NO' QUESTIONS

[B1] Can report questions using 'ask' + 'if' or 'whether' + clause, with a pronoun and tense shift where relevant.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You asked me if I like shopping.*

*I am asking you if we can change the time of the meeting to 5.00 pm.*

*A very rich movie producer asked her if she wanted to be in a movie, he said she would get paid 500,000 dollars, she agreed.*

*I asked her if she wanted to go and have dinner together.*

*Renata, a really good friend of mine, told me she was in this club, but she left it some time ago; she asked me if I was interested in joining this amazing club.*

*I'm writing to ask whether you're free next Saturday or not.*

### Comments

Note that 'whether' in reported questions is very low frequency and in fact is even lower in native speaker corpus data.

### FORM: REPORTED REQUESTS AND COMMANDS

[B1] Can report requests and commands with 'ask' or 'tell' + direct object and 'to-'infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*She asked me to come back as soon as possible because my father is seriously ill.*

*As the concert finished, I heard someone call my name, I turned and there were two men from security who asked me to go up on the stage.*

*Dad asked me to help him at work.*

*He told me to go outside the concert hall and wait for him to come.*

*I have caught a cold and my doctors told me to rest in bed for a few days.*

*They told me to stay in the car and watch them and try to remember their faces.*

### FORM: REPORTED REQUESTS AND COMMANDS, NEGATIVE

[B2] Can report requests and commands with 'ask' or 'tell' + direct object + 'not' + 'to-'infinitive.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Meanwhile, she told me not to be scared but the place was very... old.*

*I told him not to climb the wall but he was so interested in doing movements that he did not listen to me.*

*Arriving there, my father told me not to go far and to stay near him.*

*I asked Pat not to tell anyone, and she promised me she wouldn't.*

### FORM: REPORTED STATEMENTS, PRONOUN AND TENSE SHIFT

[B1] Can report statements using a reporting clause with 'say' or 'tell' + 'that-'clause, with a pronoun and tense shift where relevant.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I immediately called her to see if everything was o.k. and she said that she had won the lottery and she wanted to give some of the money to me.*

*He said that she was in big trouble because the phone was a bomb.*

*They said that our school was the most suitable school for that movie.*

*He said that it was his phone and he had left it in a cafe.*

*He said that he was a nuclear scientist and we had met before.*

*Mary told me that she was dating John.*

*In the letter, he told me that he was coming to Madrid on the first of June and he asked me if I was free.*

## VERBS

### LINKING

#### FORM: LINKING + COMPLEMENT

[B2] Can use a wide range of linking verbs with complements.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*There are indeed many ways of doing this and it all seems very confusing.*

*The food is a little bit strange but tastes good.*

*Now the whole house appeared very unfamiliar to me.*

*Alice was so unhappy that she remained silent for a long time.*

*I am writing to inform you that there is some incorrect information which appears in The Student Tourist Guidebook you published last year.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*There are indeed many ways of doing this and it all seems very confusing.*

*The food is a little bit strange but tastes good.*

*Now the whole house appeared very unfamiliar to me.*

*Alice was so unhappy that she remained silent for a long time.*

*I am writing to inform you that there are some incorrect information which appears in The Student Tourist Guidebook you published last year.*

### PATTERNS\_THAT CLAUSES

#### FORM: REPORTING VERBS + DIRECT OBJECT 'THAT'-CLAUSE

[B1] Can use an increasing range of verbs, typically reporting or mental process verbs, with a 'that'-clause as the direct object.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Now you're sixteen, I totally understand that you don't want to go on holiday with your parents.*

*When I got there, I realised that I wasn't the only winner.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Now you're sixteen, I totally understand that you don't want to go on holiday with your parents.*

*When I got there I realised that I wasn't the only winner.*

### FORM: VERBS + PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE + 'THAT'-CLAUSE

[B1] Can use some reporting verbs with a prepositional phrase followed by a 'that'-clause as the direct object.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I think also that you should say to your parents that you want to try a new experience with your friends.*

*[about meeting a famous person] When I said to my friends that I had met with him, they didn't believe me.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I think also that you should say to your parents that you want to try a new experience with your friends.*

*[about meeting a famous person] When I said to my friend that I had met with him, they didn't believe.*

## PATTERNS\_WITH TO AND -ING

### FORM/USE: 'WOULD HATE' + 'TO'

[C2] Can use 'would hate' + 'to' infinitive, for emphasis.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*We in the student committee would hate to see all that space go to waste.*

*I am very much aware of my parents' mistakes and would hate to make the same ones.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We in the student committee would hate to see all that space go to waist.*

*I am very much aware of my parent's mistakes and would hate to make the same ones.*

### Comments

While it might seem surprising to see this pattern at C2, note its use – it is being used to strengthen what is said in a formal authoritative voice.

### FORM/USE: 'WOULD PREFER' + 'TO', POLITENESS

[B1] Can use 'would prefer' + 'to' infinitive, often for politeness.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would prefer to pay by cash.*

*I would prefer to meet you at six o'clock instead of four, at the café in my hometown.*

*I'd prefer to go on holiday with my friends.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would prefer to pay by cash.*

*I would prefer to meet you at six o'clock instead of four at the café in my hometown.*

*I'd prefer to go on holiday with my friends.*



### Comments

Would prefer to is often but not exclusively used to be more polite.

### FORM/USE: VERBS OF SENSES + OBJECT + '-ING'

[B2] Can use some verbs connected with the senses + direct object + an '-ing' form, to give emphasis to an ongoing activity.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Then I heard someone screaming, I was afraid and I said to the others: "Let's go out, something is happening".*

*I think we can learn nothing by seeing animals out of their habitat: we cannot see them running or eating or hunting.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Then I heard someone screaming , I was afraid and I said to the others: "Let's go out, something is happening".*

*I think we can learn nothing by seeing animals out of their habitat: we cannot see them running or eating or hunting:*

### Comments

While the corresponding infinitive form is used by some at B2, its widespread use does not appear until C1 (e.g. 'I heard someone scream.').

### FORM/USE: VERBS OF SENSES + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

[C1] Can use some verbs connected with the senses + direct object + infinitive without 'to' emphasising a complete action.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would like to see it develop without any pollution and without destroying the environment.*

*Nowadays, it is very common in Argentina to hear people talk about the economic depression.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would like to see it develop without any pollution and without destroing the environment.*

*Nowadays, it is very common in Argentina to hear people talk about the economic depression*

### Comments

Note the subtle difference between the -ing and infinitive forms: e.g. I heard someone screaming and I heard someone scream. The -ing form places the speaker/writer ?inside? the action in a more involved way. The infinitive form places the speaker/writer ?outside? the action.

### FORM: 'HELP' + OBJECT

[B1] Can use 'help' + object + infinitive with or without 'to', with no change in meaning.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I wanted to help him to make some friends. He's just like me.*

*I hope that it will help you to keep fit.*

*I hope my advice can help you choose where to go.*

*This house is terrible and I hope you can help me find something better.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I wanted to help him to make some friends He's just like me.*

*I hope that it will help you to keep fit.*

*I hope my advice can help you choose where to go.*

*This house is terrible and I hope you can help me find something better.*

### Comments

The evidence of this at A2 is heavily task influenced and restricted to two verbs, 'paint' and 'find', and these are taken from the rubric of the task

### FORM: 'MAKE', 'LET' + INFINITIVE WITHOUT 'TO'

[B1] Can use 'make' and 'let' + infinitive without 'to'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*Let me know if it is suitable for you.*

*She makes me smile when I'm sad.*

*She always makes me laugh!*

*You are eighteen now, you can do what you want and they should let you do it.*

*I think you should talk with your parents and try to make them understand how you feel and what you prefer.*

*Maybe your parents are afraid of letting you go away by yourself, they still consider you their baby.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Let me know if it is suitable for you.*

*She makes me smile when I'm sad.*

*She always makes me laugh !*

*You are eighteen now, you can do what you want and they should let you do it.*

*I think you should talk with your parents and try to make them understand how you feel and what you prefer.*

*Maybe your parents are afraid of letting you go away by yourself, they still consider you their baby.*

### Comments

As the examples show, 'let' and 'make' have a range of uses, but the form remains the same.

### FORM: 'TO'-INFINITIVE OR '-ING' FORM, MEANING

[B2] Can follow some verbs with a 'to'-infinitive or an '-ing' form, with a change in meaning.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*He said if you need to change the time, remember to contact him to make a new appointment.*

*I know it is difficult to get by with such a low salary but I am sure you have not stopped to think twice about your life.*

*I remember feeling very unhappy and confused all day long.*

*After I had a baby, I needed to stop working.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*He said if you need to change the time, remember to contact him to make a new appointment.*

*I remember feeling very unhappy, confused during all day.*

*I know it is difficult to get by with such a low salary but I am sure you have not stopped to think twice about the sense of your life.*

*After I had a baby, I needed to stop working.*

### FORM: VERB + '-ING' FORM

[B1] Can use a limited range of verbs followed by an '-ing' form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would like to stay there a few years to finish studying and to have my own money to start thinking of travelling.*

*So, would you mind telling Mr and Mrs Thomas.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would like to stay there a few years to finish studying and to have my own money to start thinking on travelling.*

*So, would you mind telling Mr and Mrs Thomas.*

[B2] Can use an increasing range of verbs followed by an '-ing' form.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about cars] ... we can't avoid using them because we are used to them.*

*I couldn't stand being there.*

*Moreover we may consider offering bonus schemes, to increase the staff's loyalty to our company.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[talking about cars] ... we can't avoid using them because we are used to them.*

*I couldn't stand being there.*

*Moreover we may consider offering bonus schemes, to increase staff's loyalty to our company.*

#### Comments

These are the verbs which are most frequently used at B2 with this pattern in the CLC. Though there are very few examples of 'admit', 'deny' and 'risk' at B2, they can clearly do the pattern at this level.

### FORM: VERB + 'TO-' INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use a wide range of verbs followed by a 'to-' infinitive.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*? it's one of the reasons I decided to change class.*

*I'm going to buy pictures to hang on the wall, because my room seems to be very cold and very unfriendly.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I prefer to stay in the countryside, what I think is better.*

*? it's one of the reasons I decided to change class.*

*I'm going to buy pictures to hang them against the wall, because my room seems to be very cold and very unfriendly.*

### FORM: VERB + NEW SUBJECT + '-ING' FORM

[B2] Can introduce a new subject before the '-ing' form (using noun or object pronoun).

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If your boss doesn't mind you delaying, it could be a possible solution.*

*I could not stand people shouting at me, or taking pictures of me all day. It would be horrible.*

*Oh just one more thing: would you mind me staying in your flat again?*

*We imagine it being a frozen land, where the people are ?frozen? too – both 'inside' and 'outside'.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*We imagine it being a frozen land, where the people are "frozen" too –both 'inside' and 'outside'.*

*If your boss doesn't mind you delaying every morning it could be a possible solution.*

*I could not stand people shouting at me, or taking pictures of me during all the day. it would be horrible.*

*Oh just one more thing: would you mind me staying in your flat again?*

### FORM: VERBS + DIRECT OBJECT + 'TO' INFINITIVE

[B1] Can use some verbs of requesting and commanding followed by a direct object and a 'to-'infinitive.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I would like you to come to a picnic on Saturday.*

*I would like you to come to my office on 16th of May to discuss the terms of the contract.*

*Your parents want you to go on holiday with them this summer.*

*You asked me to tell you about one of my friends.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I would like you to come to a picnic on Saturday.*

*I would like you to come to my office on 16th of May to discuss the term of contract.*

*Your parents want you to go on holiday with them this summer.*

*You asked me to tell you about one of my friends.*

#### Comments

This form is used for requests, commands and reported requests and commands.

## PHRASAL

### FORM: NO OBJECT

[B1] Can use an increasing range of phrasal verbs without an object.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I needed to hang out because my life was too jam-packed and hectic.*

*[talking about a phone] Its battery had run out.*

*She cried a lot. Her feelings, emotions were all scattered. But Lisa didn't give up.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I needed to hang out because my life was too jam-packed hectic.*

*[talking about a phone] Its battery had run out.*

*She cried a lot. Her feelings, emotions were all scattered. But Lisa didn't give up.*

[B2] Can use a wide range of phrasal verbs without an object.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Some species are dying out, and keeping such animals in zoos where they can give life to new generations is the only way to prevent them from becoming completely extinct.*

*The following day my grandpa didn't show up.*

*If you are not good enough at reading, you'll end up wasting your time.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Some species are dying out, and keeping such animals in zoos where they can give life to new generations is the only way to prevent them from becoming completely extinct.*

*The following day my grandpa didn't show up.*

*If you are not good enough at reading, you'll end up wasting your time.*

#### **FORM: VERB + NOUN + PARTICLE**

[B2] Can use phrasal verbs + nouns as object + particle.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I am glad that you have decided to take some time off and more glad because you are going to the U.S.*

*Another way is also to turn the computers off in the evenings.*

*It was necessary to call the electrician up.*

*If we can make these improvements, we might be able to work this problem out.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I am glad that you have decide to take some time off and more glad because you are going to U.S.*

*Another way is also to turn the computers off in the evenings.*

*It was neccesary to call the electrician up.*

*If we can make these improvment, we might be able to work this problem out.*

#### **Comments**

By B2, there are a lot of examples of this pattern. By C2, there are many more and varied examples e.g. 'But if you feel you cannot live with having kicked your relatives out.' ?

#### **FORM: VERB + PARTICLE + OBJECT**

[B1] Can use a limited range of phrasal verbs + particle + object.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*Were it not for my university, I would give up this class immediately.*

*I must travel to Mexico City because I won a novel contest and I need to pick up my award.*

*So I opened the envelope and took out the letter.*

*She turned off the phone and walked to the bathroom.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*Were it not for my university, I would give up this class immediately.*

*I must travel to Mexico City because I won a novel contest and I need to pick up my award.*

*They continued to talk till she got off the bus.*

*So I opened the envelope and took out the letter.*

*She turned off the phone and walked to the bathroom.*

[B2] Can use a wide range of phrasal verbs + particle + object.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I don't need to use my imagination while I'm surfing the internet, but if I'm reading a book I can build up the whole surroundings and the characters in my own head.*

*I had already booked my seat on the ferry-boat to Athens and I couldn't put off my crossing.*

*I can surf the internet and look up some useful information.*

*The concert finished very late and after the concert I had to clean up the hall.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I don't need to use my imagination while I'm surfing the Internet, but if I'm reading a book I can build up the whole surroundings and the characters in my own head.*

*I had already booked my seat on the ferry-boat to Athens and I couldn't put off my crossing.*

*I can surf the internet and look up some useful information.*

*?the concert finished very late and after the concert I had to clean up the hall?*

### **FORM: VERB + PRONOUN + PARTICLE**

[B1] Can use an increasing range of phrasal verbs + object pronoun + particle.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*I heard about this club when I was watching T.V. and I wanted to check it out.*

*I really like shopping for clothes, but I hate trying them on because always when I finish, the shop assistant shows me more clothes.*

*So, think it over and tell me what you decide to do.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*I heard about this club when I was watching T.V. and I wanted to check it out.*

*I really like shopping for clothes, but I hate trying them on because always when I finish, the shop assistant shows me more clothes.*

*So, think it over and tell me what you decide to do.*

[C1] Can use a wide range of phrasal verbs + object pronoun + particle.

#### **Corrected Learner Examples**

*[talking about a band] I went to check them out last week and here is my review of the two concerts.*

*[talking about a living room] I tried to clean it up as much as possible.*

*[talking about setting up an office phone system] We just need a small set and a little time to fix it up.*

#### **Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*[talking about a band] I went to check them out last week and here is my review of the two concerts.*

*[talking about a living room] I tried to clean it up as much as possible.*

*[talking about setting up an office phone system] We just need a small set and a little time to fix it up.*

## PHRASAL–PREPOSITIONAL

### FORM: PHRASAL–PREPOSITIONAL VERB, STRANDED PREPOSITION

[C1] Can use verb + particle + preposition, where the preposition is separated from its complement. ► Prepositions

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*Anyway, let me tell you what ideas I came up with.*

*Sometimes in order to feel confident and to be inspired we need a person to look up to.*

*This you will have to look out for.*

*This shows her superficiality, which Kingshaw cannot put up with.*

*Firstly, let me express that the situation you describe is certainly not something my client could easily put up with.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*Anyway, let me tell you what ideas I came up with.*

*Sometimes in order to feel confidence and to be inspired we need person to look up to.*

*This you will have to look out for.*

*At Kingshaw's school the boys mock her, calling her "an old tart,, and even Charles hates her jewellery and bracelets "sliding up and down her hand,, This shows her superficiality, which Kingshaw cannot put up with.*

*Firstly, let me express that the situation you describe is certainly not something my client could easily put up with.*

#### Comments

There is an increase in use of the stranded preposition at C2 but enough evidence to show the structure being used successfully at C1 in a range of clause types.

### FORM: VERB + DIRECT OBJECT + PARTICLE + PREPOSITION + OBJECT

[C2] Can use a direct object with some prepositional verbs as well as an object of the preposition.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*It is widely accepted that being a loyal and trusted individual means that the people around us can trust us or let us in on a secret.*

#### Comments

Other phrasal prepositional verbs that can take a direct object after the verb are fix ? up with and put ? up to. There are no occurrences of these in the CLC. Other examples in the CLC that follow this form include put it down to chance/experience, take it out on someone but they are fixed expressions.

### FORM: VERB + PARTICLE + PREPOSITION + OBJECT

[B1] Can use a limited range of verbs + particle + preposition + noun or pronoun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I could catch up with the work I miss after school from 3 to 4.*

*They interviewed and filmed pupils and teachers to find out how they get on with each other.*

*I'd better stop now and get on with my studying.*

*I think that if you want to have a peaceful holiday, you should get away from the city and enjoy the countryside, enjoy nature.*

*So you had better go walking or join a club, but don't forget to keep away from junk food.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I could catch up with the work I miss after school from 3 to 4.*

*They interviewed and filmed pupils and teachers to find out how they get on with each other.*

*I'd better stop now and get on with my studying.*

*I think that if you want have a peacefull holiday, you should get away from the city and enjoy the countryside, enjoy nature.*

*So you had better go walking or join a Club, but don't forget to keep away from junk food.*

[B2] Can use an increasing range of verb + particle + preposition + noun or pronoun.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I can look up to someone in admiration if he (or she) is dedicating his (or her) life to helping other people.*

*Other people will see you as a knowledgeable person and they will look up to you.*

*You should face up to the problem and tell everybody the truth, that you are working too hard.*

*We couldn't just swim and eat ice-cream every day of our summer vacation, so we sat down and came up with the craziest idea ever.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*The reason that I can look up to someone in admiration is if he (or she) is dedicating his (or her) life to help other people*

*Other people will see you as a knowledgeable person and they will look up to you.*

*You should face up to the problem and tell everybody the truth that you are working too hard.*

*We couldn't just swim and eat ice-creams every day of our summer vacation, so we sat down and came up with the craziest idea ever.*

## PREPOSITIONAL

### FORM: PREPOSITIONAL VERB, STRANDED PREPOSITION

[B2] Can use verb + preposition, where the preposition is separated from its complement.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*In Poland rules that refer to how to dress at school aren't very strict; we don't wear any uniforms, but our clothes have to be clean and nice to look at.*

*But there is one difficulty which we should deal with.*

*I would like to give you some ideas of what people in my community want to listen to.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*In Poland rules that refer to the ways of being dressed at school aren't very strict; we don't wear any uniforms, but our clothes have to be clean and nice to look at.*

*But there is one difficulty which we should deal with.*

*I would like to give some ideas of what people in my community want to listen to.*



## Comments

Not much evidence of this where Romance language is L1.

### FORM: VERB + ADVERB + PREPOSITION

[B2] Can use an adverb between the verb and the preposition.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*I am really willing to know more about horses and to learn how to deal properly with them.  
I hope you will look carefully at the enclosed papers and I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I am really willing to know more about horses and to learn how to deal properly with them, how to feed them and if there is any chance I would like to ride them as well.  
I hope you will look carefully at the enclosed papers and I'm looking forward to hearing from you soon.*

### FORM: VERB + PREPOSITION + OBJECT

[B1] Can use an increasing range of prepositional verbs followed by noun or pronoun objects.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*If you need more information, please look at the information sheet at the entrance.  
In fact, our company needs to train some staff on how to deal with the complaints of customers.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*If you need more information, please look at the information sheet at the entrance.  
In fact, our company need to train some staffs how to deal with the complaints of customers.*

## THERE IS/ARE

### FORM: 'THERE' + MODAL VERBS

[B1] Can use 'there' with a range of modal verbs + 'be' + complement.

#### Corrected Learner Examples

*[talking about 20 years in the future] There will be flying cars and buses, and big houses.  
In the countryside there wouldn't be so many people and there is nothing to do.  
In the large school there might be a lot of people that you can meet.*

#### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*[talking about 20 years in the future] There will be flying cars and buses, and big houses.  
In the countryside there wouldn't be so many people and there is nothing you can do.  
In the large school there might be a lot of people that you can meet.*

### FORM: 'THERE' + VERBS WITH MODAL MEANING

[B2] Can use 'there' with other verbs with modal meaning + 'be' + complement.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*I figured out that there had to be matches somewhere; Bob, who owned the cabin, had told me that it was well equipped.*

*In the library there needs to be school books and also other books and magazines.*

*There is going to be a theatre performance, a chess championship and last but not least, swimming races where the participants will win medals and a lot of prizes.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*I figured out that there had to be matches somewhere, Bob who owned the cabine had told me that it was well equipped.*

*In the labery there needs to be school books and also other books and magazines.*

*There is going to be a theater performance, a chess championship and the last but not least, swimming races where the participants will win medals and a lot of prices.*

### Comments

Note the singular use of 'needs' with plural complement, generally more frequent in spoken informal contexts than written.

## FORM: NEGATIVE

[B1] Can use 'There' + 'be' + 'n?t' with countable and uncountable nouns.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*There isn't any noise.*

*The spring is the best time because there aren't too many tourists.*

*There wasn't any message on it, just a big word "DIE".*

*There weren't any people on the bus she took.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*There isn't any noise.*

*The spring is the best time because there aren't too many tourists.*

*There wasn't any menssage on it, just a big word "DIE".*

*There weren't any people on the bus she took.*

## TYPES

### FORM: SEMI-MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS, 'DARE', 'NEED'

[B2] Can use semi-modal auxiliary verbs, 'dare' and 'need'.

### Corrected Learner Examples

*You needn't worry about where we can stay.*

*I think that they are rather jealous because they daren't give up their car.*

### Uncorrected Learner Examples

*You needn't worry about where we can stay.*

*I think that they are rather jalous because they daren't give up their car.*

### Comments

LOW FREQUENCY ITEM. There is very little use of dare as a semi-modal in CLC even at C2 level. Most examples are dare as main verb. At C level there is lots of evidence of dare + to inf and lots of errors with dare + -ing; Similarly need is most frequently used as a lexical verb need to.

**FORM: SEMI-MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS, 'USED TO', 'OUGHT TO'**

[B1] Can use semi-modal auxiliary verbs, 'used to' and 'ought to'.

**Corrected Learner Examples**

*But we used to play together every single day!*

*I think you ought to join a gym and you should go for a walk at least three times a week.*

**Uncorrected Learner Examples**

*But we used to play together every single day!*

*I think you ought to join a gym and you should go for a walk at least three times a week.*